



# Bodleian Libraries

UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD

This book is part of the collection held by the Bodleian Libraries and scanned by Google, Inc. for the Google Books Library Project.

For more information see:

<http://www.bodleian.ox.ac.uk/dbooks>



This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 2.0 UK: England & Wales (CC BY-NC-SA 2.0) licence.

PAX







600108058S









*IN OMNIBUS GLORIFICETUR DEUS.*

---

# THE RULE

OF

Our Most Holy Father St. Benedict,  
PATRIARCH OF MONKS.

*FROM THE OLD ENGLISH EDITION OF 1638.*

EDITED IN LATIN AND ENGLISH

BY ONE OF THE BENEDICTINE FATHERS OF  
ST. MICHAEL'S, NEAR HEREFORD.



LONDON :  
R. WASHBOURNE, 18 PATERNOSTER ROW.  
1875.

110. k. 592.







## P R E F A C E.

---

THE venerable Father Baker, while acting as spiritual director to the Benedictine Nuns at Cambrai, compiled for their use a Commentary upon the Rule of our Holy Father St. Benedict. In the few remarks which he prefixed to that work, he states that the first seven chapters of the Rule, "were done into English" by Father Leander Jones, commonly called Father Leander of St. Martin. It would seem that when he had gone thus far with his translation, he was hindered from proceeding any farther by his appointment to the important office of President General of the English Benedictine Congregation. The task which he had so happily begun was not, however, suffered to remain long in its unfinished condition. It was taken up and completed, most probably, by Father Cuthbert Fursden, whose



initials, C. F., stand upon the title-page of the edition published in 1638.

With some necessary alterations, the present edition is a reprint of that published in the above mentioned year. Though possibly inferior, from a literary point of view, to many of the English versions already in existence, nevertheless for our Benedictine Sisters, at whose request and for whose use it is chiefly published, it possesses a charm to which no other can pretend to lay claim. To many of them it has been the medium through which they have imbibed the spirit of our Holy Father, while to our Sisters of Stanbrook it is hallowed by memories which must invest it in their eyes with a character almost sacred. It was certainly used in the Convent of Cambrai by those illustrious Sisters, of whom they are the lineal descendants, and whose saintly lives they so earnestly strive to emulate. They look upon it, therefore, as a kind of heirloom, and its quaintness speaks to them of days of trial long gone by, of hardships endured, of obstacles removed, of difficulties overcome, and of the many cherished ones who have passed from among them, after learning from its pages that heavenly prudence, which taught them to

have their lamps trimmed, and their vessels filled with oil, when the Bridegroom came and called them to the marriage-feast.

Their preference for it, therefore, is not to be attributed to a mere love for what is antique, but arises rather from a very praiseworthy desire to perpetuate the existence of an old and valued translation, associated in their memories with some of the holiest and happiest moments of their lives.

Of the two men to whom we are indebted for the translation of the Rule, Father Leander is the more celebrated. Cressy says of him, "that his learning and piety were famous throughout Christendom." He was born in London in the year 1575, though the family from which he sprang came originally from Llan Wrinach in Brecknockshire. When he was old enough to cope with the rough discipline of the public school, his parents sent him to that of the Merchant Tailors where he received the earlier part of his education. After completing the course of studies at this establishment, he passed thence, at about the age of sixteen, to St. John's College, Oxford. The room which he occupied, while there, was shared with him by William Laud, afterwards



Archbishop of Canterbury, who retained for him throughout life the warmest affection and attachment. On leaving the University, he applied to the study of Law, and succeeded in taking a Bachelor's degree in it, and was then made Fellow of his College. He did not retain this position very long, for his profoundly religious spirit was not satisfied with the Faith by Law established, and his logical mind was startled by its glaring inconsistencies. After mature deliberation and careful study, his determination was taken; he returned to the ancient Faith, which had been for a thousand years the Religion of his country, and feeling within himself the secret promptings of the Holy Spirit to betake himself to a life of perfection, he turned his back, like the Patriarch of old, upon friends, and home, and kindred, and went to Spain, where he entered the Benedictine Monastery of Compostella, and was there professed about the year 1600.

He was then sent to the University of Salamanca to prosecute his theological studies, during the course of which he was advanced to the Priesthood. He crowned his theological career by winning for himself the degree of

Doctor of Divinity, and was then directed by his Superiors to join his countrymen of the Spanish Benedictine Congregation, who were at that time labouring upon the English Mission. On his journey through France he stayed at the Abbey of St. Remigius at Rheims, and at the earnest entreaty of the Abbot was allowed by his Superiors to remain there for some time to train their Novices. Proceeding thence towards his final destination, he reached Douai. Here, also, he was ordered to undertake the same office, and remained at the Benedictine Monastery in the exercise of his arduous duties from the year 1607 till 1612. In this latter year he was appointed Vicar General over all the English Benedictines of the Spanish Congregation residing out of Spain. Throughout the period during which he exercised this office, his most strenuous efforts were directed towards bringing about a union between the Old English and Spanish Congregations. It was only natural that since he belonged to the latter of these two, he should direct the whole weight of his influence towards bringing the English Fathers of the Old Congregation under the authority of the Spanish General. Owing,

however, to the exertions of Father Anselm Beech, who had lately been elected President of the Cassinese and Old English Congregations, the latter, which had come down by direct succession from St. Augustine, and had for centuries flourished in this country, was saved from losing its independent existence.

In 1617 nine Definitors were elected to draw up the terms of union between the two Congregations. Father Leander's name stood first among these, and as soon as matters were finally arranged, Dr. Gifford was chosen first President Elect, and Father Leander second President Elect, to succeed in case the President should die before the expiration of his term of office. Dr. Gifford, however, was elevated at this time to the episcopal dignity, and thus the honour of being the first President of the present English Congregation devolved upon Father Leander.

At the meeting of the first General Chapter held at Douai in 1621, he ceased to be President, because it was not usual in our Congregation at that time to be re-elected to the same office, and was then appointed to the Priorship of St. Gregory's. After the lapse of twelve years, he was again called to be President, and on the

23rd of April, 1634, had the satisfaction, at St. Gregory's in Douai, of hearing the promulgation of the famous Bull *Plantata*, issued by Urban VIII., whereby the English Congregation was firmly established and confirmed in all its immunities and privileges.

He was a man of extraordinary eloquence, famous for his mastery of the Oriental languages, and for his wide and varied knowledge in all the arts and sciences. Multifarious and harassing as were the duties of his public life, he nevertheless continued to discharge the office of Professor of Theology and Hebrew for twenty-four years, either in the College of Marchienne, or in that of St. Vedast. He died at London on the 27th of December, 1635, in the sixtieth year of his age.\*

\* The following are the works of Father Leander Jones :—

I. *Sacra Ars Memoriae, ad Scripturas Divinas in promptu habendas, memoriterque ediscendas accommodata.* Duaci. 1623.

II. *Conciliatio Locorum Communium totius Scripturæ.* Duaci. 1623.

III. *Biblia Sacra.* 6 vols. Published under Father Leander's care.

IV. *Opera Ludovici Blosii.*

V. *Arnobius, cum Notis.*

Father John Fursden was the eldest son of Mr. Philip Fursden of Thornton in Devonshire. About the spring of the year 1620, Father Baker was appointed by his Superiors to be Chaplain in the house of this gentleman. The eminent sanctity of this great Ascetic made so profound an impression upon John, that he put himself entirely under his direction, and became one of his most enthusiastic disciples. He soon made such progress that his spirit of prayer and his spotless innocence of life won for him from God the great privilege of a call to the Religious state. He accordingly proceeded to Douai, and received the holy habit of St. Benedict at St. Gregory's. On completing the year of probation, he took the solemn vows of Religion in 1622. While he remained in the Monastery, he was remarkable for his exact observance of all the discipline of Religious life, for his sublime spirit of Prayer, and for his total abstraction from everything which could disturb the intimate union of his soul with its Maker. When sent on the English Mission he continued to lead a life

---

VI. *Apostolatus Benedictinus*. 1626. (The third Tract was compiled by him, and the whole work penned by him in Latin.)



precisely similar to that which he had led in the Cloister, so that his very person became eloquent by the persuasive spirit of sanctity which shone through him and drew others nigh to God.

He was appointed Chaplain to Lady Falkland, and while acting in that capacity, succeeded in winning over to the church her four daughters, two of whom afterwards became Benedictine Nuns at Cambrai. It was in Lady Falkland's house that Father Serenus Cressy, then a Protestant dignitary, first became acquainted with him. His religious modesty, and the example of his holy life, aided no doubt by his fervent prayer, made so deep an impression upon this eminent man, that he was eventually led back to the Old Faith, and became one of the brightest lights of our Order.

In after years he used to attribute the grace of his conversion to the eminent virtues and pious example of this humble and devout Priest.

Father Fursden completed his earthly career at the house of Lady Falkland on the 2nd of February, 1638. The translation of the Life and Rule of St. Benedict are attributed to him.

May the Religious Spirit which actuated these two saintly men, their love for our Holy Father St. Benedict, and their zeal for the glory of God, fill the hearts of all men; but especially of those who like them, "have left all things to follow Christ."

St. Michael's Priory, Hereford,  
Commemoration of Our Holy Father St. Benedict,  
July 11th, 1875.

THE *Dates* inserted in the Margin of the Latin Text, are to point out that portion of the Rule which is read in Monasteries every day, either at *Prime*, or if it be a fast day, before the evening Collation. The entire Rule is thus read through three times each year.



## INDEX.

---

CAPUT	PAGE
Sanctissimi Patris Benedicti in Regulam	
Suam Prologus - - - - -	2
I. De generibus Monachorum - - - - -	16
II. Qualis esse debeat Abbas - - - - -	20
III. De adhibendis ad consilium Fratribus -	32
IV. Quæ sint instrumenta bonorum operum -	36
V. De Obedientia Discipulorum - - - - -	46
VI. De Taciturnitate - - - - -	52
VII. De Humilitate - - - - -	56
VIII. De Officiis Divinis in Noctibus - - -	74
IX. Quot Psalmi dicendi sunt in Nocturnis	
Horis - - - - -	78
X. Qualiter æstatis tempore agatur Nocturna	
Laus - - - - -	82
XI. Qualiter Dominicis diebus Vigilæ agantur	84
XII. Qualiter Matutinarum Solemnitas agatur	88
XIII. Privatis diebus qualiter Matutini agantur	90
XIV. In Natalitiis Sanctorum qualiter Vigilæ	
agantur - - - - -	94
XV. "Alleluia" quibus temporibus dicatur -	96
XVI. Qualiter Divina Opera per diem agantur	98



## CONTENTS.

---

CHAPTER	PAGE
The Prologue of Our Most Holy Father Saint Benedict to His Rule - - -	3
I. Of the several kinds of Monks - - -	17
II. What kind of man the Abbot ought to be -	21
III. Of calling the Brethren to Council - -	33
IV. What are the instruments of good works -	37
V. Of the Obedience of Disciples - - -	47
VI. Of Silence - - - - -	53
VII. Of Humility - - - - -	57
VIII. Of the Divine Office at night-time - -	75
IX. How many Psalms are to be said in the Night Hours - - - - -	79
X. How Matins, or Night Office, is to be cele- brated in Summer - - - - -	83
XI. How Matins, or Night Office, is to be cele- brated on Sundays - - - - -	85
XII. How the Solemnity of Lauds is to be per- formed - - - - -	89
XIII. How Lauds are to be celebrated on Ferial or Week days - - - - -	91
XIV. In what manner the Office of Matins is to be celebrated on the Feast days of Saints	95

CAPUT	PAGE
XVII. Quot Psalmi per easdem Horas dicendi sunt - - - - -	100
XVIII. Quo ordine Psalmi dicendi sunt	104
XIX. De Disciplina psallendi - -	112
XX. De Reverentia Orationis - -	114
XXI. De Decanis Monasterii - -	116
XXII. Quomodo dormiant Monachi - -	118
XXIII. De Excommunicatione Culparum	122
XXIV. Qualis debeat esse modus Excommu- nicationis - - - - -	124
XXV. De Gravioribus Culpis - -	126
XXVI. De iis, qui sine jussione Abbatis junguntur excommunicatis - -	128
XXVII. Qualis debeat esse sollicitus Abbas circa excommunicatos - -	130
XXVIII. De iis, qui sæpius correcti non emen- dantur - - - - -	134
XXIX. Si debeant iterum recipi Fratres ex- euntes de Monasterio - -	138
XXX. De Pueris minori ætate, qualiter cor- ripiantur - - - - -	140
XXXI. De Cellerario Monasterii - -	142
XXXII. De ferramentis, vel rebus Monasterii	148
XXXIII. Si quid debeant Monachi proprium habere - - - - -	150
XXXIV. Si omnes debeant æqualiter necessaria accipere - - - - -	152
XXXV. De Septimanariis Coquinæ - -	154
XXXVI. De Infirmis Fratribus - -	158
XXXVII. De Senibus, vel Infantibus - -	162
XXXVIII. De Hebdomadario Lectore - -	164
XXXIX. De Mensura Ciborum - -	168

*Contents.*

xvii

CHAPTER	PAGE
XV. At what seasons "Alleluia" must be said	97
XVI. In what manner the Work of God is to be done in the day time - - -	99
XVII. How many Psalms are to be said during the aforesaid Hours - - -	101
XVIII. In what order the Psalms are to be said	105
XIX. Of the Order and Discipline of Singing	113
XX. Of Reverence at Prayer - - -	115
XXI. Of the Deans of the Monastery - -	117
XXII. How the Monks are to sleep - -	119
XXIII. Of Excommunication for offences -	123
XXIV. What the manner of Excommunication ought to be - - - -	125
XXV. Of more grievous faults - - -	127
XXVI. Of those who keep company with the Excommunicated without the com- mand of the Abbot - - -	129
XXVII. How the Abbot ought to care for the Excommunicated - - -	131
XXVIII. Of those who, being often corrected, do not amend - - - -	135
XXIX. Whether the Brethren who leave the Monastery ought to be received again	139
XXX. How Children are to be corrected -	141
XXXI. What kind of man the Cellarer of the Monastery ought to be - - -	143
XXXII. Of the iron tools, or goods of the Monastery - - - -	149
XXXIII. Whether Monks ought to have anything of their own - - - -	151
XXXIV. Whether all ought equally to receive what is needful - - - -	153



CAPUT	PAGE
XL. De Mensura Potus - - - -	172
XLI. Quibus horis oporteat Reficere Fratres	176
XLII. Ut post Completorium nemo loquatur -	180
XLIII. De iis, qui ad Opus Dei, vel ad Mensam tarde occurrunt - - - -	184
XLIV. De iis qui excommunicantur, quomodo satisfaciant - - - -	190
XLV. De iis qui falluntur in Oratorio - -	194
XLVI. De iis qui in aliis quibuslibet rebus delinquant - - - -	196
XLVII. De significanda hora Operis Dei - -	198
XLVIII. De Opere Manuum quotidiano - -	200
XLIX. De Quadragesimæ Observatione - -	206
L. De Fratribus qui longe ab Oratorio labo- rant, aut in viâ sunt - - - -	210
LI. De Fratribus qui non satis longe pro- ficiscuntur - - - -	212
LII. De Oratorio Monasterii - - - -	214
LIII. De Hospitibus suscipiendis - - -	216
LIV. Si debet Monachus Litteras, vel Eulo- gias suscipere - - - -	222
LV. De vestimentis, et calceamentis Fratrum	224
LVI. De Mensa Abbatis - - - -	230
LVII. De Artificibus Monasterii - - -	232
LVIII. De Disciplina suscipiendorum Fratrum	236
LIX. De Filiis nobilium vel pauperum, qui offeruntur - - - -	244
LX. De Sacerdotibus, qui voluerint in Monas- terio habitare - - - -	248
LXI. De Monachis peregrinis, qualiter susci- pantur - - - -	252
LXII. De Sacerdotibus Monasterii - - -	256

*Contents.*

xix

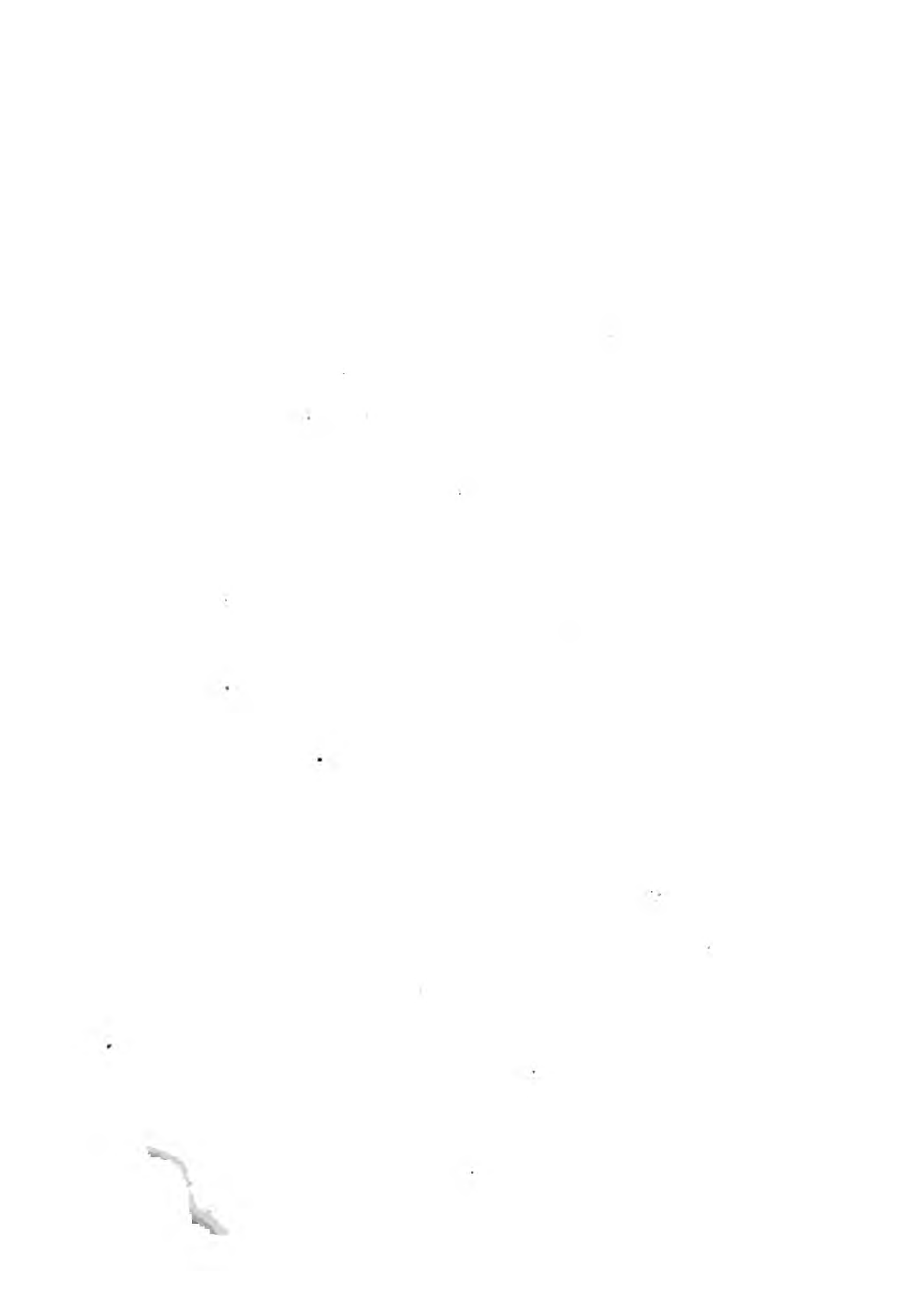
CHAPTER	PAGE
XXXV. Of the Weekly Servers in the Kitchen	155
XXXVI. Of the Sick Brethren - - -	159
XXXVII. Of Old Men and Children - -	163
XXXVIII. Of the Weekly Reader - - -	165
XXXIX. Of the Measure or Quantity of Meat	169
XL. Of the Measure of Drink - - -	173
XLI. At what hours the Brethren are to take their Refections - - -	177
XLII. That no one may speak after Complin	181
XLIII. Of those who come late to the Work of God or to Table - - -	185
XLIV. How those who are Excommunicated are to make Satisfaction - - -	191
XLV. Of those who commit any fault in the Oratory - - - - -	195
XLVI. Of those who offend in lighter matters	197
XLVII. Of making known the hour for the Work of God - - - - -	199
XLVIII. Of Daily Manual Labour - - -	201
XLIX. Of the Observance of Lent - - -	207
L. Of the Brethren who work at a dis- tance from the Oratory, or are on a journey - - - - -	211
LI. Of the Brethren who do not go far off	213
LII. Of the Oratory of the Monastery -	215
LIII. Of the manner of entertaining Guests	217
LIV. Whether it be lawful for a Monk to receive Letters or Presents - - -	223
LV. Of the Clothes and Shoes of the Brethren - - - - -	225
LVI. Of the Abbot's Table - - - -	231
LVII. Of the Artificers of the Monastery -	233

CAPUT	PAGE
LXIII. De Ordine Congregationis - -	260
LXIV. De Ordinando Abbate - -	266
LXV. De Præposito Monasterii - -	272
LXVI. De Ostiario Monasterii - -	278
LXVII. De Fratibus in Via directis - -	282
LXVIII. Si Fratri impossibilia injungantur -	286
LXIX. Ut in Monasterio non præsumat alter alterum defendere - - -	288
LXX. Ut non præsumat quisquam aliquem passim cædere aut excommunicare -	290
LXXI. Ut obedientes sint sibi invicem Fratres	292
LXXII. De zelo bono, quem debent habere Monachi - - - -	296
LXXIII. De eo quod non omnis observatio justitiæ in hac sit Regula constituta - -	298

*Contents.*

xxi

CHAPTER	PAGE
LVIII. Of the manner of receiving Brothers to Religion - - - - -	237
LIX. Of the Sons of Nobles, or of the Poor that are offered - - - - -	245
LX. Of Priests who desire to dwell in the Monastery - - - - -	249
LXI. Of Monks that are strangers, how they are to be received - - - - -	253
LXII. Of the Priests of the Monastery - - - - -	257
LXIII. Of the order of the Community - - - - -	261
LXIV. Of the election of the Abbot - - - - -	267
LXV. Of the Prepositus or Provost of the Monastery - - - - -	273
LXVI. Of the Porter of the Monastery - - - - -	279
LXVII. Of Brethren who are sent on a journey	283
LXVIII. If a Brother be ordered to do impossibilities - - - - -	287
LXIX. That no one presume to defend another in the Monastery - - - - -	289
LXX. That no one presume to strike or excommunicate another - - - - -	291
LXXI. That the Brethren be obedient to each other - - - - -	293
LXXII. Of the good zeal which Monks ought to have - - - - -	297
LXXIII. That the highest degree of perfection is not contained in this Rule - - - - -	299







# SANCTISSIMI PATRIS BENEDICTI

IN REGULAM SUAM

## PROLOGUS.

---

<sup>1 Jan.</sup> AUSCULTA, o fili, præcepta Magistri, et in-  
<sup>2 Maii.</sup>  
<sup>1 Sept.</sup> clina aurem cordis tui, et admonitionem  
pii Patris libenter excipe, et efficaciter comple ;  
ut ad eum, per obedientiæ laborem redeas, a  
quo per inobedienciæ desidiam recesseras. Ad  
te ergo nunc meus sermo dirigitur, quisquis  
abrenuntians propriis voluntatibus, Domino  
Christo vero Regi militaturus, obedientiæ for-  
tissima atque præclara arma assumis.

In primis, ut quidquid agendum inchoas





THE PROLOGUE  
OF OUR  
MOST HOLY FATHER SAINT BENEDICT  
TO HIS RULE.

---

HEARKEN, my son, to the precepts of thy Master, and incline the ear of thy heart willingly to hear, and effectually to accomplish, the admonition of thy loving Father, that by the labour of obedience thou mayest return to Him, from Whom thou didst depart by the sloth of disobedience. To thee therefore is my speech now directed, who, renouncing thy own will, dost take upon thee the strong and bright armour of obedience, to fight under the Lord Christ our true King.

First of all whatever good work thou dost

bonum, ab eo perfici instantissima oratione deposcas; ut, qui nos jam in filiorum dignatus est numero computare, non debeat aliquando de malis actibus nostris contristari. Ita enim ei omni tempore de bonis suis in nobis parendum est; ut non solum, ut iratus pater, non aliquando filios suos exhæredet; sed nec, ut metuendus Dominus, irritatus malis nostris, ut nequissimos servos, perpetuam tradat ad pœnam qui eum sequi noluerint ad gloriam.

2 Jan.      Exsurgamus ergo tandem aliquando, ex-  
 3 Maii  
 2 Sept.      citante nos Scriptura, ac dicente: “Hora est jam nos de somno surgere.”<sup>1</sup> Et apertis oculis nostris ad deificum lumen, attonitis auribus audiamus, divina quotidie clamans quid nos admoneat vox, dicens: “Hodie si vocem ejus audieritis, nolite obdurare corda vestra.”<sup>2</sup> Et iterum: “Qui habet aures audiendi, audiat quid Spiritus dicat Ecclesiis.”<sup>3</sup> Et quid dicit? “Venite, filii, audite me: timorem Domini docebo vos.”<sup>4</sup> “Currite, dum lumen vitæ

<sup>1</sup> Rom. xiii. 11.  
 Apoc. ii. 7.

<sup>2</sup> Ps. xciv. 8.  
<sup>4</sup> Ps. xxxiii. 12.

begin, beg of Him with most earnest prayer to perfect ; that He Who hath now vouchsafed to reckon us in the number of His children, may not hereafter be saddened by our evil deeds. For we must at all times so serve Him with the goods He hath bestowed upon us, that He may not either as an angry Father disinherit us His children, or as a dread Lord, exasperated by our offences, deliver us up to perpetual punishment as wicked servants, who would not follow Him to glory.

Let us therefore at length arise, since the Scripture stirreth us up and saith, "It is now the hour for us to rise from sleep,"<sup>1</sup> and our eyes being opened to the deifying light, let us with wondering ears attend to the admonition which the Divine Voice daily addresseth to us, saying : "To-day if you shall hear His voice, harden not your hearts."<sup>2</sup> And again : "He that hath ears, let him hear what the Spirit saith to the Churches."<sup>3</sup> And what saith He ? "Come, ye children, and hearken unto Me : I will teach you the fear of the Lord."<sup>4</sup> "Run

habetis, ne tenebræ mortis vos comprehendant.”<sup>1</sup>

Et quærens Dominus in multitudine  
3 Jan.  
4 Maii  
8 Sept. populi, cui hæc clamat, operarium suum, iterum dicit: “Quis est homo, qui vult vitam, et cupit videre dies bonos?”<sup>2</sup> Quod si tu audiens, respondeas: Ego; dicit tibi Deus: Si vis habere veram et perpetuam vitam, “prohibe linguam tuam a malo, et labia tua ne loquantur dolum. Diverte a malo, et fac bonum; inquire pacem et sequere eam.”<sup>3</sup> Et cum hæc feceritis, oculi mei super vos, et aures meæ ad preces vestras. Et antequam me invocetis, dicam: “Ecce adsum.”<sup>4</sup> Quid dulcius nobis hac voce Domini invitantis nos, fratres charissimi? Ecce pietate sua demonstrat nobis Dominus viam vitæ. Succinctis ergo fide, vel observantia bonorum actuum lumbis nostris, per ducatum Evangelii pergamus itinera ejus, ut mereamur eum, qui nos vocavit, in regno suo videre.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Joan. xii. 35.

<sup>2</sup> Ps. xxxiii. 13.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. 14, 15.

<sup>4</sup> Isai. lxxv. 24.

<sup>5</sup> Ephes. vi. 14, 15.

while ye have the light of life, that the darkness of death overtake ye not.”<sup>1</sup>

And our Lord seeking His labourer among the multitude to whom He here speaketh, saith again : “ Who is the man that will have life, and desireth to see good days ?”<sup>2</sup> If thou, hearing this, dost answer : “ I am he :” God saith unto thee : “ If thou wilt have true and everlasting life, refrain thy tongue from evil, and thy lips, that they speak no guile. Decline from evil, and do good ; seek after peace and pursue it.”<sup>3</sup> And when you have done this : My eyes shall be upon you, and My ears shall be open to your prayers. And before you can call upon Me, I will say : “ Behold I am present.”<sup>4</sup> What, dearest brethren, can be sweeter, than this voice of the Lord, inviting us ? Behold how in His loving kindness He showeth unto us the way of life ! Our loins therefore being girt with faith and the observance of good works, and our feet shod with the guidance of the Gospel of peace, let us walk in His ways, that we may deserve to see Him Who hath called us unto His kingdom.<sup>5</sup>

4 Jan. In cujus regni tabernaculo si volumus  
 5 Maii habitare, nisi illuc bonis actibus currendo,  
 4 Sept. minime pervenitur. Sed interrogemus cum  
 Propheta Dominum, dicentes ei: "Domine, quis  
 habitabit in tabernaculo tuo, aut quis requiescet  
 in monte sancto tuo?"<sup>1</sup> Post hanc interroga-  
 tionem, fratres, audiamus Dominum responden-  
 tem, et ostendentem nobis viam ipsius taber-  
 naculi, ac dicentem: "Qui ingreditur sine  
 macula, et operatur justitiam; qui loquitur  
 veritatem in corde suo; qui non egit dolum in  
 lingua sua; qui non fecit proximo suo malum,  
 et opprobrium non accepit adversus proximum  
 suum."<sup>2</sup>

Qui malignum diabolum aliqua suadentem  
 sibi, cum ipsa suasionem sua a conspectibus  
 cordis sui respuens, deduxit ad nihilum, et  
 parvulos cogitatus ejus tenuit, et allisit ad  
 Christum.<sup>3</sup> Qui timentes Dominum, de bona  
 observantia sua non se reddunt elatos, sed ipsa  
 in se bona, non a se posse, sed a Domino fieri  
 existimantes operantem in se Dominum mag-

<sup>1</sup> Ps. xiv. 4.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 2, 3.

<sup>3</sup> Ps. cxxxvi. 9.



If we desire to dwell in the tabernacle of this kingdom, we must apply ourselves to good works, whereby alone it can be reached. But let us ask our Lord with the Prophet and say to Him: "Lord, who shall dwell in Thy tabernacle, or who shall rest on Thy holy hill?"<sup>1</sup> After this question, Brethren, let us hear our Lord answering and showing us the way that leadeth to His tabernacle, saying: "He that walketh without spot, and worketh justice. He that speaketh truth in his heart, that hath not forged guile with his tongue. He that hath not done evil to his neighbour, and hath not received reproach against him."<sup>2</sup>

He that rejecting out of his mind the malignant devil with all his suggestions, hath brought them all to nought, and taking his thoughts while they are still young, hath dashed them against the rock Christ.<sup>3</sup> All they who fearing the Lord, take not pride in their good observance and well-doing, but knowing that all the good they have, or can do, proceedeth not from themselves, but from



nificant, illud cum Propheta dicentes: "Non nobis, Domine, non nobis, sed nomini tuo da gloriam."<sup>1</sup> Sicut nec Paulus Apostolus de prædicatione sua sibi aliquid imputavit, dicens: "Gratia Dei sum id, quod sum."<sup>2</sup> Et iterum ipse dicit: "Qui gloriatur, in Domino gloriatur."<sup>3</sup>

<sup>5 Jan.</sup> Unde et Dominus in Evangelio ait:  
<sup>6 Maii</sup>  
<sup>5 Sept.</sup> "Qui audit verba mea hæc, et facit ea, simi-  
 labo eum viro sapienti, qui ædificavit domum  
 suam supra petram: venerunt flumina, flaverunt  
 venti, et impegerunt in domum illam, et non  
 cecidit: fundata enim erat supra petram."<sup>4</sup> Hæc  
 complens Dominus, expectat quotidie, his suis  
 sanctis monitis, factis nos respondere debere.  
 Ideo nobis propter emendationem malorum,  
 hujus dies vitæ ad inducias relaxantur, dicente  
 Apostolo: "An nescis, quia patientia Dei ad  
 pœnitentiam te adducit?"<sup>5</sup> Nam pius Dominus  
 dicit: "Nolo mortem peccatoris, sed ut conver-  
 tatur, et vivat."<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Ps. cxiii. 1.

<sup>2</sup> 2 Cor. x. 47.

<sup>5</sup> Rom. ii. 4.

<sup>2</sup> 1 Cor. xv. 10.

<sup>4</sup> Matth. vii. 24, seq.

<sup>6</sup> Ezech. xviii. 23.

the Lord, magnify Him, thus working in them, and say with the Prophet: "Not to us O Lord, not to us, but to Thy Name give glory."<sup>1</sup> Thus the Apostle Paul imputed not anything of his preaching to himself, saying: "By the grace of God I am what I am."<sup>2</sup> And again he saith: "He that glorieth, let him glory in the Lord."<sup>3</sup>

Hence also our Lord saith in the Gospel: "He that heareth these My words and doth them,—I will liken him to a wise man that hath built his house upon a rock. The floods came, the winds blew, and beat against that house, and it fell not; because it was founded upon a rock."<sup>4</sup> Our Lord fulfilling His promises, daily waiteth for us to answer by our deeds, these His holy admonitions. Therefore the days of our life are prolonged for the amendment of our evil deeds, according to those words of the Apostle: "Knowest thou not that the patience of God leadeth thee to repentance?"<sup>5</sup> For our loving Lord saith: "I will not the death of the sinner, but that he be converted and live."<sup>6</sup>

6 Jan.  
7 Maii  
6 Sept. Quum ergo interrogassemus Dominum, fratres, de habitatore tabernaculi ejus, audivimus habitandi præceptum: sed si compleamus habitatoris officium, erimus hæredes Regni cœlorum. Ergo præparanda sunt corda et corpora nostra sanctæ præceptorum obedientiæ militatura; et quod minus habet in nobis natura possibile, rogemus Dominum, ut gratiæ suæ jubeat nobis adjutorium ministrare. Et si fugientes gehennæ pœnas ad vitam perpetuam volumus pervenire, dum adhuc vacat, et in hoc corpore sumus, et hæc omnia per hanc lucis viam vacat implere, currendum et agendum est modo, quod in perpetuum nobis expediat.

7 Jan.  
8 Maii  
7 Sept. Constituenda est ergo a nobis Dominici schola servitii; in qua institutione nihil asperum, nihilque grave nos constituturos speramus. Sed et si quid paululum, restrictius, dictante æquitatis ratione, propter emendationem vitiorum, vel conservationem charitatis processerit, non illico pavore perterritus refugas viam salutis, quæ non est nisi angusto

Having therefore, my Brethren, enquired of our Lord who shall be the dweller in this tabernacle, we have heard what his duties are, and if we fulfil them, we shall be heirs of the heavenly kingdom. Let us therefore now prepare our hearts and bodies to fight under the holy obedience of His commands, and beg of our Lord to supply that, by the assistance of His grace, which our nature is unable to perform. And if we desire to avoid the pains of hell, and attain to everlasting life, we must, while yet time serves, and we live in this mortal flesh, and may perform all these things by the light of faith, haste to do that now which will be expedient for us for ever hereafter.

We are therefore now about to institute a school of the service of God; in which we hope nothing will be ordained too rigorous or burthensome. But if in some things we proceed with a little severity, sound reason so advising, for the amendment of vices or preserving of charity; do not straightway for fear thereof, flee from the way of salvation

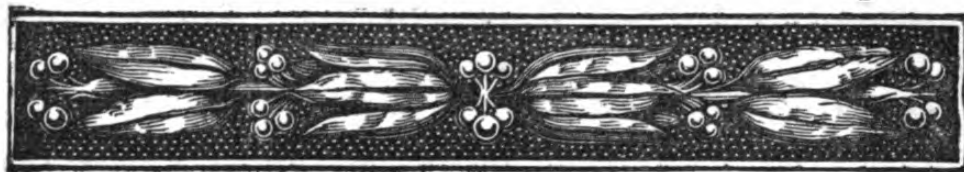
initio incipienda.<sup>1</sup> Processu vero conversationis et fidei, dilatato corde, inenarrabili dilectionis dulcedine curritur via mandatorum Dei; ut ab ipsius nunquam magisterio discedentes, in ejus doctrina usque ad mortem in monasterio perseverantes, passionibus Christi per patientiam participemus, ut regni ejus mereamur esse consortes.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Matth. vii. 13.

<sup>2</sup> 2 Cor. i. 7.

which is always strait and difficult in the beginning.<sup>1</sup> But in process of time and by long continuance in this holy course and method of life, when the heart has once been enlarged, the way of God's commandments is run with unspeakable sweetness of love; so that, never departing from His school, but persevering in the Monastery in His doctrine until death, we share now by patience in the sufferings of Christ, that we may deserve afterwards to be partakers of His kingdom.<sup>2</sup>





## CAPUT I.

### DE GENERIBUS MONACHORUM.

8 Jan. MONACHORUM quatuor esse genera mani-  
9 Maii festum est. Primum Cœnobitarum, hoc est,  
8 Sept. monasteriale, militans sub regula vel Abbate. Deinde secundum genus est Anachoretarum, id est, Eremitarum, horum qui non conversionis fervore novitio, sed monasterii probatione diuturna, didicerunt contra diabolum, multorum solatio jam docti, pugnare; et bene instructi fraterna ex acie ad singularem pugnam eremi securi jam sine consolatione alterius, sola manu vel brachio, contra vitia carnis vel cogitationum, Deo auxiliante, sufficiunt pugnare. Tertium vero monachorum deterrimum genus est Sarabaitarum, qui nulla regula approbati, experientia magistra, sicut aurum fornacis, sed in plumbi natura molliti, adhuc operibus servantes sæculo fidem, mentiri Deo per tonnsuram noscuntur.



## CHAPTER I.

### OF THE SEVERAL KINDS OF MONKS.

IT is well known that there are four kinds of Monks. The first are Cenobites, that is, Monastic, or Conventual, living under a Rule or Abbot. The second are Anchorets or Hermits, who, not in the first fervour of devotion, but after long probation in the monastic life, have learnt to fight against the devil, and after being aided by the comfort and encouragement of others, are now able by God's assistance to strive hand to hand against the flesh and evil thoughts, and so go forth from the army of the Brotherhood, to the single combat of the wilderness. The third and worst kind of Monks are the Sarabites, who have never been tried under any Rule, nor by the experience of a skilful master, as gold is tried in the furnace, but being soft as lead, and by their works still cleaving to the world, are known by their tonsure to be disloyal to God.

Qui bini aut terni, aut certe singuli sine pastore, non Dominicis, sed suis inclusi ovilibus, pro lege eis est desideriorum voluptas: cum quicquid putaverint vel elegerint, hoc dicunt sanctum, et quod noluerint, hoc putant non licere.

Quartum vero genus est monachorum, quod nominatur Gyrovagum, qui tota vita sua per diversas provincias ternis aut quaternis diebus per diversorum cellas hospitantur, semper vagi et nunquam stabiles, et propriis voluptatibus et gulæ illecebris servientes, et per omnia deteriores Sarabaitis; de quorum omnium miserima conversatione melius est silere, quam loqui. His ergo omissis, ad Cœnobitarum fortissimum genus disponendum, adjuvante Domino, veniamus.

These in twos or threes, or perhaps singly, and without a shepherd, are shut up, not in our Lord's sheep-folds, but in their own: the pleasure of their desires is to them a law; and whatever they like or make choice of, they will have to be holy, but what they like not, that they consider unlawful.

The fourth kind of Monks are called "Gyrovagi," or wanderers, who travel about all their lives through divers provinces, and stay for two or three days as guests, first in one monastery, then in another; they are always roving, and never settled, giving themselves up altogether to their own pleasures and to the enticements of gluttony, and are generally in all things worse than the Sarabites. Their miserable way of life is fitter to be buried in oblivion than to be the subject of our discourse. Therefore leaving these, let us, by God's assistance, set down a Rule for Cenobites, or Conventuals, who are the most steadfast class of Monks.



## CAPUT II.

### QUALIS ESSE DEBEAT ABBAS.

9 Jan. ABBAS, qui præesse dignus est monasterio,  
10 Maii  
9 Sept. semper meminisse debet, quod dicitur, et  
nomen Majoris factis implere. Christi enim  
agere vices in monasterio creditur, quando  
ipsius vocatur prænomine, dicente Apostolo:  
“Accepistis spiritum adoptionis filiorum, in  
quo clamamus, Abba, Pater.”<sup>1</sup> Ideoque Abbas  
nihil extra præceptum Domini (quod absit)  
debet aut docere, aut constituere, vel jubere:  
sed jussio ejus vel doctrina, fermentum divi-  
næ justitiæ, in discipulorum mentibus consper-  
gatur.

<sup>1</sup> Rom. viii. 15.



## CHAPTER II.

WHAT KIND OF MAN THE ABBOT OUGHT TO BE.

AN Abbot who is worthy to have charge of a Monastery ought always to remember by what title he is called, and in his actions show forth the character of Ancient. For in the Monastery he is considered to represent the person of Christ, seeing that he is called by His name and title, as the Apostle saith: "Ye have received the spirit of the adoption of children, in which we cry, 'Abba, Father.'<sup>1</sup>" Therefore the Abbot ought to teach, ordain, or command nothing but what is conformable to the commands of our Lord (and God forbid he should do otherwise); but let his commands and doctrine be mingled in the minds of his disciples with the leaven of divine justice.



10 Jan. Memor sit semper Abbas, quia doctrinæ  
 11 Maii  
 10 Sept. suæ vel discipulorum obedientiæ, utrarum-  
 que rerum in tremendo iudicio Dei facienda  
 erit discussio, sciatque Abbas, culpæ pastoris  
 incumbere, quicquid in ovibus paterfamilias  
 utilitatis minus potuerit invenire. Tantum  
 iterum liber erit, si inquieto vel inobedienti  
 gregi pastoris fuerit omnis diligentia attributa,  
 et morbidis earum actibus universa fuerit cura  
 exhibita: pastor earum in iudicio Domini ab-  
 solutus, dicat cum Propheta Domino: "Justitiam  
 tuam non abscondi in corde meo, veritatem  
 tuam, et salutare tuum dixi <sup>1</sup> ipsi autem con-  
 temnentes spreverunt me." <sup>2</sup> Et tunc demum  
 inobedientibus curæ suæ ovibus pœna sit eis  
 prævalens ipsa mors.

11 Jan. Ergo cum aliquis suscipit nomen Abba-  
 12 Maii  
 11 Sept. tis, duplici debet doctrina suis præesse  
 discipulis; id est, omnia bona, et sancta, factis  
 amplius, quam verbis ostendere, ut capacibus  
 discipulis mandata Domini verbis proponat:  
 duris vero corde et simplicioribus, factis suis  
 divina præcepta demonstret. Omnia vero quæ

<sup>1</sup> Ps. xxxix. 11.

<sup>2</sup> Is. i. 2.



*What kind of man the Abbot ought to be. 23*

Let the Abbot always be mindful that, in the dreadful judgment of God, he must give an account both of his doctrine and of the obedience of his disciples, and that any lack of profit which the master of the family shall find in his sheep, will be laid to the shepherd's fault. But if he have bestowed all diligence on his unquiet and disobedient flock, and employed the utmost care to cure their corrupt manners, he shall then be acquitted in the judgment of the Lord, and may say with the Prophet: "I have not hidden thy justice in my heart, I have told thy truth and thy salvation,<sup>1</sup> but they contemned and despised me."<sup>2</sup> And then finally, death shall be inflicted as a just punishment upon the disobedient sheep.

When, therefore, anyone taketh upon himself the name of Abbot, he ought to govern his disciples with a twofold doctrine; that is, he ought first to show them all virtue and sanctity, more by deeds than by words: hence, to such as are intelligent, he may declare the commandments of God by words; but to the hard-hearted, and to those of the ruder sort, he must

discipulis docuerit esse contraria, in suis factis indicet non agenda; ne aliis prædicans, ipse reprobus inveniatur.<sup>1</sup> Ne quando illi dicat Deus peccanti: "Quare tu enarras justitias meas, et assumis testamentum meum per os tuum; Tu vero odisti disciplinam, et projecisti sermones meos post te."<sup>2</sup> Et "Qui in fratris tui oculo festucam videbas, in tuo trabem non vidisti?"<sup>3</sup>

<sup>12 Jan.</sup> Non ab eo persona in monasterio dis-  
<sup>13 Maii</sup> cernatur. Non unus plus ametur, quam  
<sup>12 Sept.</sup> alius, nisi quem in bonis actibus, aut obedi-  
 entia invenerit meliorem. Non convertenti ex  
 servitio præponatur ingenuus, nisi alia rationa-  
 bilis causa existat. Quod si ita, justitia dictante,  
 Abbati visum fuerit, et de cujuslibet ordine id  
 faciat; sin alias, propria teneant loca: quia  
 sive servus, sive liber, omnes in Christo unum  
 sumus,<sup>4</sup> et sub uno Domino æqualem servitutis

<sup>1</sup> 1 Cor. ix. 27. <sup>2</sup> Ps. xlix. 16, 17. <sup>3</sup> Matth. vii. 3.

<sup>4</sup> 1 Cor. xii. 13; Rom. ii. 11.

*What kind of man the Abbot ought to be.* 25

make these precepts manifest by his actions and by his life. In the next place, let him show by his own deeds, that they ought not to do anything which he has taught them to be unfitting, lest, having preached well to others, "he himself become a castaway,"<sup>1</sup> and God say unto him thus sinning: "Why dost thou declare My justices, and take My testament in thy mouth? Thou hast hated discipline, and cast My speeches behind thee."<sup>2</sup> And,—“Thou, who didst see the mote in thy brother's eye, hast thou not seen the beam that is in thine own?”<sup>3</sup>

Let there be no distinction of persons in the Monastery. Let not one be loved or favoured more than another, except he be found to surpass the rest in good works and in obedience. Let not the freeman, or one of noble parentage, on coming to Religion, be put before him who is of servile or mean extraction, except there be some other reasonable cause for it. If, upon consideration, the Abbot shall think there is such a just cause, let him put him in any rank or degree he shall please, but otherwise, let every one keep his own place; because "whether bondman or freeman, we are

militiam bajulamus: "Quia non est personarum acceptio apud Deum."<sup>1</sup> Solummodo in hac parte apud ipsum discernimur, si meliores aliis in operibus bonis, et humiles inveniamur. Ergo æqualis sit omnibus ab eo charitas; una præbeatur omnibus, secundum merita disciplina.

<sup>13 Jan.</sup> In doctrina namque sua Abbas Aposto-  
<sup>14 Maii</sup>  
<sup>18 Sept.</sup> licam debet illam semper formam servare, in qua dicitur: "Argue, obsecra, increpa."<sup>2</sup> Id est, miscens temporibus tempora, terroribus blandimenta: durum magistri, pium patris ostendat affectum: id est, indisciplinatos et inquietos debet durius arguere; obedientes autem, et mites et patientes, ut melius proficiant, obsecrare; negligentes autem et contemnentes, ut increpet et corripiat, admonemus. Neque dissimulet peccata delinquentium, sed mox, ut cœperint oriri, radicitus ea, ut præ-

<sup>1</sup> Ephes. vi. 9.

<sup>2</sup> 2 Tim. iv. 2.

*What kind of man the Abbot ought to be. 27*

all one in Christ,"<sup>4</sup> and bear an equal burthen of servitude under one Lord; "for with God there is no accepting of persons."<sup>1</sup> On one condition only doth He make any difference, and that is, if in good works and in humility we surpass others. Therefore let the Abbot bear equal love to all; and let all be subject to the same orders and discipline, according to their deserts.

For the Abbot ought always, in his doctrine, to observe that apostolic form wherein it is said: "Reprove, entreat, reprehend."<sup>2</sup> That is to say, he ought, as times and occasions require, by tempering fair speeches with threats, to show both the severity of a master and the loving affection of a father. Those who are disorderly and restless he must reprove sharply; but with such as are obedient, mild, and patient, he should deal by entreaty, exhorting them to go forward in virtue. But the stubborn and negligent let him by all means severely reprove and chastise. Let him not shut his eyes to the sins of offenders, but, as soon as they show themselves, use all possible endeavours utterly to root them out, remembering the fate



valet, amputet: memor periculi Heli sacerdotis de Silo.<sup>1</sup> Et honestiores quidem, atque intelligibiles animos, prima vel secunda admonitione verbis corripiat; improbos autem, et duros, ac superbos, vel inobedientes, verberum vel corporis castigatione in ipso initio peccati coerceat, sciens scriptum: "Stultus verbis non corrigitur."<sup>2</sup> Et iterum: "Percute filium tuum virga, et liberabis animam ejus a morte."<sup>3</sup>

14 Jan.      Meminisse debet semper Abbas, quod  
15 Maii  
14 Sept. est, meminisse, quod dicitur et scire quia  
cui plus committitur, plus ab eo exigitur: sciatque quam difficilem et arduam rem suscepit, regere animas, et multorum servire moribus. Et alium quidem blandimentis, alium vero increpationibus, alium suasionibus, et secundum uniuscujusque qualitatem vel intelligentiam, ita se omnibus conformet et aptet, ut non solum detrimenta gregis sibi commissi non patiatur, verum etiam in augmentatione boni gregis gaudeat.

<sup>1</sup> 1 Reg. ii. 12 seq.

<sup>2</sup> Prov. xxiii. 13.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. 14.

*What kind of man the Abbot ought to be.* 29

of Heli, the Priest of Silo.<sup>1</sup> With the more virtuous and intelligent, let him for the first or second time use words of admonition; but the stubborn, the hard-hearted, the proud and the disobedient, even in the very beginning of their sin, let him chastise with stripes and bodily punishment, knowing that it is written: "The fool is not corrected with words."<sup>2</sup> And again: "Strike thy son with the rod, and thou shalt deliver his soul from death."<sup>3</sup>

The Abbot ought always to remember what he is, and what he is called, and that unto whom more is entrusted, from him more is exacted. Let him consider how difficult and hard a task he hath undertaken, to govern souls, and to accommodate himself to the humours of many, some of whom must be led by fair speeches, others by sharp reprehensions, and others by persuasion. Therefore let him so adapt himself to the character and intelligence of each one, that he may not only suffer no loss in the flock committed to him, but may even rejoice in the increase and profit of his virtuous flock.



15 Jan. Ante omnia, ne dissimulans, aut parvi-  
 16 Maii pendens salutem animarum sibi commis-  
 15 Sept. sarum, plus gerat sollicitudinem de rebus trans-  
 itoriis, et terrenis atque caducis, sed semper  
 cogitet quia animas suscepit regendas, de qui-  
 bus et rationem redditurus est. Et ne causetur  
 forte de minori substantia, meminerit scriptum :  
 “Primum quærite regnum Dei, et justitiam  
 ejus, et hæc omnia adjicientur vobis.”<sup>1</sup> Et  
 iterum : “Nihil deest timentibus eum.”<sup>2</sup>

Sciatque quia, qui suscipit animas regendas,  
 præparet se ad rationem reddendam. Et  
 quantum sub cura sua fratrum se habere scierit  
 numerum, agnoscat pro certo, quia in die ju-  
 dicii ipsarum omnium animarum est redditurus  
 Domino rationem, sine dubio addita et suæ  
 animæ. Et ita timens semper futuram discus-  
 sionem pastoris de creditis ovibus, cum de  
 alienis ratiociniis cavet, redditur de suis solli-  
 citus. Et cum de admonitionibus suis emenda-  
 tionem aliis subministrat, ipse efficitur a vitiis  
 emendatus.

<sup>1</sup> Matt. vi. 33.

<sup>2</sup> Ps. xxxiii. 19.

*What kind of man the Abbot ought to be. 31*

Above all things, let him take heed not to slight or make little account of the souls committed to his keeping, and have more care for fleeting, worldly things than for them; but let him always consider that he hath undertaken the government of souls for which he shall also have to give an account. And that he may not complain for want of temporal means, let him remember that it is written: "Seek ye first the kingdom of God and His justice, and all things shall be given to ye."<sup>1</sup> And again: "Nothing is wanting to such as fear Him."<sup>2</sup>

Let him know that the man who undertakes the government of souls must prepare himself to give an account of them. And how great soever the number of brethren may be, let him know for certain that at the day of judgment he will have to give to the Lord an account for all their souls as well as for his own. Thus, by fearing the examination which the shepherd must undergo for the flock committed to his charge, he is made solicitous on other men's account as well as careful on his own; and while reclaiming them by his admonitions, he is himself freed from all defects.



### CAPUT III.

#### DE ADHIBENDIS AD CONSILIUM FRATRIBUS.

<sup>16 Jan.</sup> <sup>17 Maii</sup> <sup>16 Sept.</sup> QUOTIES aliqua præcipua agenda sunt in monasterio, convocet Abbas omnem congregationem, et dicat ipse unde agitur. Et audiens consilium fratrum, tractet apud se, et quod utilius judicaverit faciat. Ideo autem omnes ad consilium vocari diximus: quia sæpe juniori Dominus revelat quod melius est. Sic autem dent fratres consilium cum omni humilitatis subjectione, ut non præsumant procaciter defendere quod eis visum fuerit, sed magis in Abbatis pendeat arbitrio, ut quod salubrius esse judicaverit, ei cuncti obediant: sed sicut discipulis convenit obedire magistro; ita et ipsum provide, et juste condecet cuncta disponere.



## CHAPTER III.

### OF CALLING THE BRETHREN TO COUNCIL.

AS often as any weighty matters have to be debated in the monastery, let the Abbot call together all the Brethren, and himself declare what is the point under deliberation. Having heard their counsel, let him prudently weigh it with himself, and then do what he shall judge most expedient. The reason why we ordain that all be called to Council, is because the Lord often revealeth to the younger what is best. And let the Brethren give their advice with all subjection and humility, and presume not stiffly to defend their own opinion, but rather leave it to the discretion of the Abbot; and what he shall think more expedient, to that let them all submit; for, as it becometh the disciples to obey their master, so doth it behove the master to dispose all things with forethought and justice.

### 34 *De adhibendis ad Consilium Fratribus.*

17 Jan.  
18 Maii  
17 Sept. In omnibus igitur omnes magistram sequantur regulam, neque ab ea temere declinetur a quoquam. Nullus in monasterio sequatur cordis proprii voluntatem, neque præsumat quisquam cum Abbate suo proterve intus, aut foris monasterium contendere. Quod si præsumpserit, regulari disciplinæ subjaceat. Ipse tamen Abbas cum timore Dei, et observatione regulæ omnia faciat; sciens se procul dubio de omnibus judiciis suis æquissimo judici Deo rationem redditurum. Si qua vero minora agenda sunt in monasterii utilitatibus, seniorum tantum utatur consilio, sicut scriptum est: "Omnia fac cum consilio, et post factum non pœnitebis." <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Eccli. xxxii. 24.

In all things, therefore, let all follow the Rule as their master, and from it let no man rashly swerve. Let no one in the monastery follow his own will. Neither let any one presume, within or without the monastery, to contend insolently with his Abbot. If he do so, let him be subjected to regular discipline. Let the Abbot, however, do all things with the fear of God, and in observance of the Rule, knowing that he shall undoubtedly give an account of all his judgments to God, the most just Judge. If any matters of less moment have to be done for the benefit of the monastery, let him take counsel with the seniors only, as it is written: "Do all things with counsel, and thou shalt not afterwards repent thee of it."<sup>1</sup>





## CAPUT IV.

### QUÆ SINT INSTRUMENTA BONORUM OPERUM.

- <sup>18 Jan.</sup> 1. PRIMUM Instrumentum : In primis,  
<sup>19 Maii</sup>  
<sup>18 Sept.</sup> Dominum Deum diligere ex toto corde  
tota anima, tota virtute.<sup>1</sup>
2. Deinde proximum tamquam teipsum.<sup>2</sup>
  3. Deinde non occidere.<sup>3</sup>
  4. Non adulterari.<sup>4</sup>
  5. Non facere furtum.<sup>5</sup>
  6. Non concupiscere.<sup>6</sup>
  7. Non falsum testimonium dicere.<sup>7</sup>
  8. Honorare omnes homines.<sup>8</sup>
  9. Et quod sibi quis fieri non vult, alii non  
faciat.<sup>9</sup>
  10. Abnegare semetipsum sibi, ut sequatur  
Christum.<sup>10</sup>
  11. Corpus castigare.<sup>11</sup>
  12. Delicias non amplecti.<sup>12</sup>
  13. Jejunium amare.<sup>13</sup>
  14. Pauperes recreare.<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Deut. vi. 5.—<sup>2</sup> Luc. x. 27.—<sup>3</sup> Luc. vii. xviii. 20.—  
<sup>4</sup> Matth. xix. 18.—<sup>5</sup> Exod. xx. 15.—<sup>6</sup> Deut. vi. 21.—  
<sup>7</sup> Marc. x. 19.—<sup>8</sup> 1 Petr. ii. 17.—<sup>9</sup> Tob. iv. 16.—<sup>10</sup> Luc.  
ix. 23.—<sup>11</sup> 1 Cor. ix. 27.—<sup>12</sup> 2 Petr. ii. 13.—<sup>13</sup> Joel i. 14 ;  
ii. 12, 15.—<sup>14</sup> Tob. iv. 7.



## CHAPTER IV.

### WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENTS OF GOOD WORKS.

1. FIRST of all, to love the Lord God with all our heart, with all our soul, with all our strength.<sup>1</sup>

2. Then our neighbour as ourself.<sup>2</sup>

3. Then not to kill.<sup>3</sup>

4. Not to commit adultery.<sup>4</sup>

5. Not to steal.<sup>5</sup>

6. Not to covet.<sup>6</sup>

7. Not to bear false witness.<sup>7</sup>

8. To honour all men.<sup>8</sup>

9. Not to do to another what we would not have done to ourselves.<sup>9</sup>

10. To deny ourselves, in order to follow Christ.<sup>10</sup>

11. To chastise the body.<sup>11</sup>

12. Not to seek after delights.<sup>12</sup>

13. To love fasting.<sup>13</sup>

14. To relieve the poor.<sup>14</sup>

38 *Quæ sint Instrumenta Bonorum Operum.*

15. Nudum vestire.<sup>1</sup>
16. Infirmum visitare.<sup>2</sup>
17. Mortuum sepelire.<sup>3</sup>
18. In tribulatione subvenire.<sup>4</sup>
19. Dolentem consolari.<sup>5</sup>
20. A seculi actibus se facere alienum.<sup>6</sup>
21. Nihil amoris Christi præponere.<sup>7</sup>
- 19 Jan. 22. Iram non perficere.<sup>8</sup>
- 20 Mai 23. Iracundiæ tempus non reservare.<sup>9</sup>
- 19 Sept. 24. Dolum in corde non tenere.<sup>10</sup>
25. Pacem falsam non dare.<sup>11</sup>
26. Charitatem non derelinquere.<sup>12</sup>
27. Non jurare, ne forte perjuret.<sup>13</sup>
28. Veritatem ex corde, et ore proferre.<sup>14</sup>
29. Malum pro malo non reddere.<sup>15</sup>
30. Injuriam non facere, sed factam patienter sufferre.<sup>16</sup>
31. Inimicos diligere.<sup>17</sup>
32. Maledicentes se non remaledicere, sed magis benedicere.<sup>18</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Isai. lviii. 7.—<sup>2</sup>Matth. xxv. 36.—<sup>3</sup>Tob. i. 21; ii. 4, 7--9.—<sup>4</sup>Isai. i. 17.—<sup>5</sup>1 Thes. v. 14.—<sup>6</sup>Jac. i. 27.—<sup>7</sup>Matth. x. 37, 38.—<sup>8</sup>Matth. v. 22.—<sup>9</sup>Ephes. iv. 26.—<sup>10</sup>Ps. xiv. 3.—<sup>11</sup>Rom. xii. 18.—<sup>12</sup>1 Petr. iv. 8.—<sup>13</sup>Matth. v. 33-37.—<sup>14</sup>Ps. xiv. 3.—<sup>15</sup>1 Thes. v. 15.—<sup>16</sup>1 Cor. 6, 7.—<sup>17</sup>Luc. vi. 27-35.—<sup>18</sup>1 Petr. iii. 9.

*What are the Instruments of Good Works.* 39

15. To clothe the naked.<sup>1</sup>
16. To visit the sick.<sup>2</sup>
17. To bury the dead.<sup>3</sup>
18. To help those that are in tribulation.<sup>4</sup>
19. To comfort the sad.<sup>5</sup>
20. To withdraw ourselves from worldly ways.<sup>6</sup>
21. To prefer nothing to the love of Christ.<sup>7</sup>
22. Not to give way to anger.<sup>8</sup>
23. Not to harbour revenge in our mind.<sup>9</sup>
24. Not to foster guile or deceit in our heart.<sup>10</sup>
25. Not to make a feigned peace.<sup>11</sup>
26. Not to forsake charity.<sup>12</sup>
27. Not to swear at all, lest we forswear ourselves.<sup>13</sup>
28. To speak the truth with heart and mouth.<sup>14</sup>
29. Not to render evil for evil.<sup>15</sup>
30. Not to do any injury; yea, and patiently to bear an injury done to us.<sup>16</sup>
31. To love our enemies.<sup>17</sup>
32. Not to speak ill of such as speak ill of us, but rather to speak well of them.<sup>18</sup>

40 *Quæ sint Instrumenta Bonorum Operum.*

33. Persecutiones pro justitia sustinere.<sup>1</sup>
34. Non esse superbum.
35. Non vinolentum.<sup>3</sup>
36. Non multum edacem.
37. Non somnolentum.<sup>5</sup>
38. Non pigrum.<sup>6</sup>
39. Non murmurosum.<sup>7</sup>
40. Non detractorem.<sup>8</sup>
41. Spem suam Deo committere.<sup>9</sup>
42. Bonum aliquod in se cum viderit, Deo applicet, non sibi.
43. Malum vero semper a se factum sciat, et sibi reputet.<sup>11</sup>
- 20 Jan. 44. Diem judicii timere.<sup>12</sup>
- 21 Maii 45. Gehennam expavescere.<sup>13</sup>
- 20 Sept. 46. Vitam æternam omni concupiscentia spirituali desiderare.<sup>14</sup>
47. Mortem quotidie ante oculos suspectam habere.<sup>15</sup>
48. Actus vitæ suæ omni hora custodire.<sup>16</sup>
49. In omni loco Deum se respicere, pro certo scire.<sup>17</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Matth. v. 10.—<sup>2</sup> Tob. iv. 14.—<sup>3</sup> 1 Tim. iii. 3—<sup>4</sup> Eccli. xxxi. 17.—<sup>5</sup> Prov. xx. 13.—<sup>6</sup> Rom. xii. 11.—<sup>7</sup> 1 Cor. x. 10.—<sup>8</sup> Sap. i. 11.—<sup>9</sup> Ps. lxxii. 28.—<sup>10</sup> 1 Cor. iv. 7.—<sup>11</sup> Ose. xii. 9.—<sup>12</sup> Job xxxi. 14.—<sup>13</sup> Matth. x. 28.—<sup>14</sup> Phil. i. 23.—<sup>15</sup> Matth xxiv. 42 et seq.—<sup>16</sup> Deut. iv. 9.—<sup>17</sup> Prov. v. 21.

*What are the Instruments of Good Works.* 41

33. To suffer persecution for justice sake.<sup>1</sup>
34. Not to be proud.<sup>2</sup>
35. Not given to wine.<sup>3</sup>
36. Not a great eater.<sup>4</sup>
37. Not drowsy.<sup>5</sup>
38. Not slothful.<sup>6</sup>
39. Not a murmurer.<sup>7</sup>
40. Not a detractor.<sup>8</sup>
41. To put our trust in God.<sup>9</sup>
42. When we see any good in ourselves, let us attribute it to God and not to ourselves.<sup>10</sup>
43. But let us always know that evil is done by ourselves, therefore let us attribute it to ourselves.<sup>11</sup>
44. To fear the day of judgment.<sup>12</sup>
45. To be afraid of hell.<sup>13</sup>
46. To desire life everlasting with spiritual thirst.<sup>14</sup>
47. To have death always before our eyes.<sup>15</sup>
48. To observe at every hour the actions of our life.<sup>16</sup>
49. To know for certain that God beholdeth us in every place.<sup>17</sup>



## 42 *Quæ sint Instrumenta Bonorum Operum.*

50. Cogitationes malas cordi suo advenientes  
mox ad Christum allidere.<sup>1</sup>

51. Et seniori spirituali patefacere.<sup>2</sup>

52. Os suum a malo, vel pravo eloquio custodire.<sup>3</sup>

53. Multum loqui non amare.<sup>4</sup>

54. Verba vana aut risui apta non loqui.<sup>5</sup>

55. Risum multum aut excussum non amare.<sup>6</sup>

56. Lectiones sanctas libenter audire.<sup>7</sup>

57. Orationi frequenter incumbere.<sup>8</sup>

58. Mala sua præterita cum lacrymis vel  
gemitu quotidie in oratione Deo confiteri, et de  
ipsis malis de cætero emendare.<sup>9</sup>

59. Desideria carnis non perficere.<sup>10</sup> Volun-  
tatem propriam odire.<sup>11</sup>

60. Præceptis Abbatis in omnibus obedire,  
etiam si ipse aliter (quod absit) agat, memor  
illius Dominici præcepti: "Quæ dicunt, facite,  
quæ autem faciunt, facere nolite."<sup>12</sup>

61. Non velle dici Sanctum, antequam sit,  
sed prius esse, quo verius dicatur.<sup>13</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Ps. cxxxvi. 9.—<sup>2</sup> Eccli. viii. 11.—<sup>3</sup> Ps. xxxiii. 13, 14:  
—<sup>4</sup> Prov. x. 19.—<sup>5</sup> Matth. xii. 36.—<sup>6</sup> Eccli. xxi. 23.—  
Luc. xi. 28.—<sup>7</sup> Col. iv. 2.—<sup>8</sup> Ps. vi. 7.—<sup>9</sup> Gal. v. 16.—  
Eccli. xviii. 30.—<sup>12</sup> Matth. xxiii. 3.—<sup>13</sup> Matth. vi. 1.



*What are the Instruments of Good Works.* 43

50. Presently, by the remembrance of Christ, to put away any evil thoughts which may enter into our heart.<sup>1</sup>

51. And to reveal all such to our spiritual Father.<sup>2</sup>

52. To keep our mouth from evil and filthy words.<sup>3</sup>

53. Not to love much talking.<sup>4</sup>

54. Not to speak vain words, nor such as move to laughter.<sup>5</sup>

55. Not to love much and dissolute laughter.<sup>6</sup>

56. Willingly to hear holy readings.<sup>7</sup>

57. To pray often devoutly.<sup>8</sup>

58. With tears and sighs, daily to confess our past evils to God in prayer, and to amend them for the time to come.<sup>9</sup>

59. Not to fulfil the desires of the flesh,<sup>10</sup> and to hate self-will.<sup>11</sup>

60. To obey in all things the commands of the Abbot, though he himself (which God forbid) should do otherwise, being mindful of that precept of our Lord: "What they say, do ye; but what they do, do ye not."<sup>12</sup>

61. Not to desire to be called holy, before we be so, and first to be holy, that we may truly be called so.<sup>13</sup>

#### 44 *Quæ sint Instrumenta Bonorum Operum.*

21 Jan, 62. Præcepta Dei factis quotidie adim-  
22 Maii  
21 Sept. plere.<sup>1</sup>

63. Castitatem amare.<sup>2</sup>

64. Nullum odire.<sup>3</sup>

65. Zelum et invidiam non habere.<sup>4</sup>

66. Contentionem non amare.<sup>5</sup>

67. Elationem fugere.<sup>6</sup>

68. Seniores venerari.<sup>7</sup>

69. Juniores diligere.<sup>8</sup>

70. In Christi amore pro inimicis orare.<sup>9</sup>

71. Cum discordantibus ante solis occasum  
in pacem redire.<sup>10</sup>

72. Et de Dei misericordia nunquam de-  
sperare.<sup>11</sup>

Ecce hæc sunt instrumenta artis spiritualis :  
quæ cum fuerint a nobis die noctuque incessa-  
biliter adimpleta, et in die iudicii reassignata,  
illa merces nobis a Domino recompensabitur,  
quam ipse promisit: " Quod oculus non vidit,  
nec auris audivit nec in cor hominis ascendit,  
quæ præparavit Deus his qui diligunt eum." <sup>12</sup>  
Officina vero, ubi hæc omnia diligenter ope-  
remur, claustra sunt monasterii, et stabilitas  
in Congregatione.

<sup>1</sup> Eccli. vi. 37.—<sup>2</sup> 1 Tim. v. 22.—<sup>3</sup> Levit. xix. 17.—

<sup>4</sup> Jacob. iii. 14, 16.—<sup>5</sup> 2 Tim. ii. 24.—<sup>6</sup> Ps. cxxx. 1.—

<sup>7</sup> Levit. xix. 32.—<sup>8</sup> 1 Tim. v. 1.—<sup>9</sup> Matth. v. 44.—

<sup>10</sup> Ephes. iv. 26.—<sup>11</sup> Ps. li. 10.—<sup>12</sup> 1 Cor. ii. 9.

*What are the Instruments of Good Works. 45*

62. Daily to fulfil in deeds the commandments of God.<sup>1</sup>

63. To love chastity.<sup>2</sup>

64. To hate no man.<sup>3</sup>

65. To flee envy and emulation.<sup>4</sup>

66. Not to love contention.<sup>5</sup>

67. To flee haughtiness.<sup>6</sup>

68. To reverence the Elders.<sup>7</sup>

69. To love inferiors for Christ's sake.<sup>8</sup>

70. To pray for our enemies.<sup>9</sup>

71. To make peace with adversaries before the setting of the sun.<sup>10</sup>

72. Never to despair of God's mercy.<sup>11</sup>

Behold these are the tools or instruments of our spiritual profession ; if we constantly employ them day and night, and have them signed with approval in the day of judgment, that reward shall be given us by our Lord as a recompense "Which eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, nor hath it entered into the heart of man to conceive what God hath prepared for those that love Him."<sup>12</sup> The workshop where all these things are to be done is the cloister of the monastery, and steadfast abiding in the Congregation.



## CAPUT V.

### DE OBEDIENTIA DISCIPULORUM.

<sup>22 Jan.</sup> PRIMUS humilitatis gradus est obedientia  
<sup>23 Maii</sup>  
<sup>22 Sept.</sup> sine mora. Hæc convenit iis, qui nihil sibi Christo charius existimant, propter metum gehennæ, vel gloriam vitæ æternæ; et mox, ut aliquid imperatum a majore fuerit, ac si divinitus imperetur, moram pati nesciunt in faciendo. De quibus Dominus dicit: "In auditu auris obedivit mihi."<sup>1</sup> Et item dicit Doctoribus: "Qui vos audit, me audit."<sup>2</sup>

Ergo hi tales relinquentes statim quæ sua sunt, et voluntatem propriam deserentes, mox exoccupatis manibus, et quod agebant imperfectum relinquentes, vicino obedientiæ pede, jubentis vocem factis sequuntur; et veluti uno momento prædicta Magistri jussio, et perfecta

<sup>1</sup> Ps. xvii. 45.

<sup>2</sup> Luc. x. 16.



## CHAPTER V.

### OF THE OBEDIENCE OF DISCIPLES.

THE first degree of humility is obedience without delay. This beseemeth those who, either through fear of hell or for the glory of life everlasting, count nothing more dear to them than Christ. These, presently, as soon as anything is commanded them by the Superior, make no delay in doing it, just as if the command had come from God. Of such, our Lord saith: "At the hearing of the ear he hath obeyed Me."<sup>1</sup> And to superiors and teachers He saith: "He that heareth you, heareth Me."

Therefore, such as these, leaving presently all their occupations, and forsaking their own will, leave unfinished what they were about, and with the speedy foot of obedience follow by deeds the voice of him who commands. And thus, as it were in one and the same moment

discipuli opera, in velocitate timoris Dei, ambæ res communiter citius explicantur, quibus ad vitam æternam gradiendi amor incumbit. Ideo angustam viam arripiunt: unde Dominus dicit: "Angusta via est, quæ ducit ad vitam;"<sup>1</sup> ut non suo arbitrio viventes, vel desideriis suis, et voluptatibus obedientes, sed ambulantes alieno iudicio et imperio, in cœnobiis degentes, Abbatem sibi præesse desiderant. Sine dubio hi tales illam Domini sententiam imitantur, qua dicit: "Non veni facere voluntatem meam, sed ejus qui misit me."<sup>2</sup>

<sup>23 Jan.</sup> Sed hæc ipsa obedientia tunc accepta-  
<sup>24 Maii</sup> bilis erit Deo, et dulcis hominibus, si  
<sup>23 Sept.</sup> quod jubetur, non trepide, non tarde, non tepide, aut cum murmure, vel cum responso nolentis efficiatur; quia obedientia, quæ majoribus præbetur, Deo exhibetur. Ipse enim dixit: "Qui vos audit, me audit."<sup>3</sup> Et cum bono animo a discipulis præberi oportet, quia "hilarem datorem diligit Deus."<sup>4</sup> Nam cum malo animo si obedit discipulus, et non solum

<sup>1</sup> Matth. vii. 14.<sup>2</sup> Joan. v. 30.<sup>3</sup> Luc. x. 16.<sup>4</sup> 2 Cor. ix. 7.



the command of the master and the perfect work of the disciple with the fear of God, go both jointly together, and are speedily effected by those who thirst after life everlasting. These take the narrow way, of which the Lord saith: "Narrow is the way which leadeth to life."<sup>1</sup> They live not according to their own will, nor follow their own desires and pleasures, but, abiding in monasteries, they will to have an Abbot over them, and walk according to his command and direction. Without doubt these fulfil that saying of our Lord: "I came not to do my own will, but the will of Him Who sent me."<sup>2</sup>

This obedience will then be acceptable to God and pleasing to men, if what is commanded be not done fearfully, slowly, coldly, or with murmuring, or an answer showing unwillingness; because the obedience which is given to superiors is given to God, Who hath said: "He that heareth you, heareth Me."<sup>3</sup> Hence it ought to be done by the disciples with a good will, because God "loveth a cheerful giver."<sup>4</sup> If the disciple obey with ill-will, and murmur, not only in words, but also in heart, although

ore, sed etiam corde si murmuraverit : etsi impleat jussionem, tamen acceptus jam non erit Deo, qui cor respicit murmurantis ; et pro tali facto nullam consequitur gratiam ; imo murmurantium pœnam incurrit, si non cum satisfactione emendaverit.

he fulfil what is commanded him, it will not be acceptable to God, Who considereth the heart of the murmurer. For such a work he shall not have any reward, but rather incurreth the penalty of murmurers, unless he amend and make satisfaction.



## CAPUT VI.

### DE TACITURNITATE.

<sup>24 Jan.</sup> <sup>5 Maii</sup> <sup>24 Sept.</sup> FACIAMUS quod ait Propheta: "Dixi, Custodiam vias meas, ut non delinquam in lingua mea: posui ori meo custodiam: obmutui, et humiliatus sum, et silui a bonis."<sup>1</sup> Hic ostendit Propheta, si bonis eloquiis interdum propter taciturnitatem debet taceri, quanto magis a malis verbis propter pœnam peccati debet cessari? Ergo, quamvis de bonis et sanctis ad ædificationem eloquiis, perfectis discipulis, propter taciturnitatis gravitatem, rara loquendi concedatur licentia, quia scriptum est: "In multiloquio non effugies peccatum." Et alibi: "Mors et vita in manibus linguæ."<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Ps. xxxviii. 2. 3.—<sup>2</sup> Prov. x. 19.—<sup>3</sup> Prov. xviii. 21.



## CHAPTER VI.

### OF SILENCE.

LET us act in accordance with that saying of the Prophet; "I have said: I will keep my ways, that I offend not with my tongue. I have been watchful over my mouth: I held my peace and humbled myself, and was silent from speaking even good things."<sup>1</sup> If, therefore, according to this saying of the Prophet we are at times to abstain, for silence sake, even from good talk, how much more ought we to refrain from evil words, on account of the guilt and penalty of sin! Therefore, because of the importance of silence, let leave to speak be seldom given, even to perfect disciples, although their words be of good and holy matters, tending unto edification; because it is written: "In much speaking, thou shalt not escape sin."<sup>2</sup> And in another place: "Death and life are in the hands of the tongue."<sup>3</sup> For

Nam loqui et docere magistrum condecet: tacere, et audire discipulo convenit.

Et ideo, si quæ requirenda sunt a Priore, cum omni humilitate et subjectione reverentiæ requirantur, ne plus videatur loqui quam expedit. Scurrilitates vero vel verba otiosa et risum moventia, æterna clausura in omnibus locis damnamus, et ad tale eloquium discipulum aperire os non permittimus.



it behoveth a master to speak and teach ; and it beseemeth a disciple to hold his peace and listen.

If, therefore, anything must be asked of the Prior, let it be done with all humility, subjection, and reverence, that he who asks may not seem to speak more than is necessary. But as for buffoonery, idle words, or such as move to laughter, we utterly condemn and forbid them in all places, nor do we allow a disciple to open his mouth to give them utterance.



## CAPUT VII.

### DE HUMILITATE.

<sup>25 Jan.</sup> <sup>26 Maii</sup> <sup>25 Sept.</sup> CLAMAT nobis Scriptura divina, fratres, dicens : “ Omnis, qui se exaltat, humiliabitur, et qui se humiliat, exaltabitur.”<sup>1</sup> Cum hæc ergo dicit, ostendit omnem exaltationem genus esse superbiæ : quod se cavere Propheta indicat, dicens : “ Domine, non est exaltatum cor meum, neque elati sunt oculi mei ; neque ambulavi in magnis, neque in mirabilibus super me.” Sed quid ? “ Si non humiliter sentiebam, sed exaltavi animam meam ; sicut ablactatus super matre sua, ita retributio in anima mea.”<sup>2</sup>

Unde, fratres, si summæ humilitatis volumus culmen attingere, et ad exaltationem illam

<sup>1</sup> Luc. xiv. 11.—<sup>2</sup> Ps. cxxx. 1. 2.



## CHAPTER VII.

### OF HUMILITY.

THE Holy Scripture crieth to us, Brethren, saying : “ Every one who exalteth himself shall be humbled, and he who humbleth himself shall be exalted.”<sup>1</sup> By these words it declares to us, that all exaltation is a kind of pride, which the Prophet showeth must carefully be avoided when he says : “ Lord, my heart is not exalted, neither are my eyes lifted up ; neither have I walked in great things, nor in wonders above myself.” But why ? “ If I did not think humbly, but exalted my soul : as a child weaned from his mother, so wilt Thou reward my soul.”<sup>2</sup>

Wherefore, Brethren, if we would attain to true humility, and speedily reach that heavenly

cœlestem, ad quam per præsentis vitæ humilitatem ascenditur, volumus velociter pervenire: actibus nostris ascendentibus, scala erigenda est, quæ in somno Jacob apparuit, per quam et descendentes et ascendentes Angeli monstrabantur.

Non aliud sine dubio descensus ille et ascensus a nobis intelligitur; nisi exaltatione descendere, et humilitate ascendere.

Scala vero ipsa erecta, nostra est vita in seculo, quæ humiliato corde a Domino erigitur ad cœlum. Latera enim hujus scalæ dicimus nostrum esse corpus et animam, in quibus lateribus diversos gradus humilitatis, vel disciplinæ, vocatio divina ascendendos inseruit.

26 Jan. Primus itaque humilitatis gradus est,  
 27 Maii  
 26 Sept. si timorem Dei sibi ante oculos semper ponens, oblivionem omnino fugiat, et semper sit memor omnium quæ præcepit Deus, qualiter contemnentes, Deum in gehennam pro peccatis incidunt, et vitam æternam, quæ timentibus Deum præparata est, animo suo semper revolvat. Et custodiens se omni hora a peccatis et vitiis, id est cogitationum, linguæ, oculorum, manuum, pedum vel voluntatis propriæ; sed et desideria carnis amputare festinet.

exaltation, which is won through the lowliness of this present life; by our ascending actions a ladder must be set up, such as appeared in sleep to Jacob, whereon he saw Angels descending and ascending.

That descent and ascent signifieth nothing else, but that we descend by exalting, and ascend by humbling ourselves.

The ladder thus erected, is our life here in this world, which through humility of heart is lifted up by our Lord to heaven. The sides of this ladder we understand to be our body and soul, in which the Divine Majesty hath placed divers degrees of humility and discipline, which we must ascend.

The first degree, then, of humility is that a man always have the fear of God before his eyes, and not be forgetful of himself. Moreover to be mindful of all that God hath commanded, and remember that such as contemn God, fall into hell for their sins, and that everlasting life is prepared for such as fear Him. And keeping himself from all sin and vice, of thought, word, eyes, hands, feet, and self-will, let him thus speedily cut off all the desires of the flesh.

Let him think that he is always beheld from

27 Jan.     Æstimet se homo de cœlis a Deo sem-  
 28 Maii  
 27 Sept. per respici omni hora, et facta sua in  
 omni loco ab aspectu Divinitatis videri, et ab  
 Angelis omni hora Deo nunciari. Demonstrat  
 nobis hoc Propheta, cum in cogitationibus  
 nostris ita Deum semper præsentem ostendit,  
 dicens: "Scrutans corda et renes Deus."<sup>1</sup> Et  
 item: "Dominus novit cogitationes hominum,  
 quoniam vanæ sunt."<sup>2</sup> Et item dicit: "In-  
 tellexisti cogitationes meas a longe;"<sup>3</sup> et:  
 "Quia cogitatio hominis confitebitur tibi."<sup>4</sup>  
 Nam ut sollicitus sit circa cogitationes per-  
 versas, dicat semper humilis frater in corde  
 suo: "Tunc ero immaculatus coram eo, si  
 observavero me ab iniquitate mea."<sup>5</sup>

28 Jan.     Voluntatem vero propriam ita facere  
 29 Maii  
 28 Sept. prohibemur, quum dicit nobis Scriptura:  
 "Et a voluntatibus tuis avertere."<sup>6</sup> Et item:  
 "Rogamus Deum in oratione, ut fiat illius  
 voluntas in nobis."<sup>7</sup>

Docemur ergo merito nostram non facere  
 voluntatem, quum cavemus illud, quod dicit  
 sancta Scriptura: "Sunt viæ, quæ videntur  
 hominibus rectæ, quarum finis usque ad pro-

<sup>1</sup> Ps. vii. 10.—<sup>2</sup> Ps. xciii. 11.—<sup>3</sup> Ps. cxxxviii. 3.—

<sup>4</sup> Ps. lxxv. 11.—<sup>5</sup> Ps. xvii. 24.—<sup>6</sup> Eccli. xviii. 30.—

<sup>7</sup> Matth. vi. 10.



heaven by God ; that all his actions, wheresoever he may be, lie open to the eye of God, and are at every hour presented before Him by His Angels. The Prophet declareth this, when, in these words, he saith that God is always present to our thoughts : “ God searcheth the heart and reins.”<sup>1</sup> And again : “ The Lord knoweth the thoughts of men, that they are vain.”<sup>2</sup> He also saith : “ Thou hast understood my thoughts afar off,”<sup>3</sup> and : “ The thought of man shall confess to Thee.”<sup>4</sup> In order therefore that the humble Brother may be careful to avoid evil thoughts, let him always say in his heart : “ Then shall I be without spot before Him, if I shall keep me from my iniquity.”<sup>5</sup>

The Scripture also forbiddeth us to do our own will, saying : “ Leave thy own will and desire.”<sup>6</sup> And again : “ We beg of God in prayer, that His Will may be done in us.”<sup>7</sup>

With good reason, therefore, are we taught to beware of doing our own will, since the Scripture saith : “ There are ways which to men seem right, the end whereof plungeth

fundum inferni demergit.”<sup>1</sup> Et cum item cavemus illud, quod de negligentibus dictum est: “Corrupti sunt, et abominabiles facti sunt in voluptatibus suis.”<sup>2</sup> In desideriis vero carnis nobis Deum credamus esse præsentem semper, quum dicit Propheta Domino: “Domine, ante te est omne desiderium meum.”<sup>3</sup>

29 Jan. Cavendum ergo ideo malum desiderium,  
30 Maii  
29 Sept. quia mors secus introitum delectationis posita est. Unde Scriptura præcipit, dicens: “Post concupiscentias tuas non eas.”<sup>4</sup> Ergo si oculi Domini speculantur bonos et malos, et Dominus de cælo semper respicit super filios hominum, ut videat si est intelligens, aut requirens Deum; et ab Angelis nobis deputatis quotidie die noctuque Domino factori nostro et Creatori omnium Deo opera nostra nunciantur: cavendum est ergo omni hora, fratres, sicut in Psalmo dicit Propheta: ne nos declinantes in malum, et inutiles factos,<sup>5</sup> aliqua hora aspiciat Deus, et parcendo nobis in hoc tempore (quia pius est, et expectat nos converti in melius), ne dicat nobis in futuro: “Hæc fecisti, et tacui.”<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Prov. xvi. 25.—<sup>2</sup> Ps. lii. 2.—<sup>3</sup> Ps. xxxvii. 10.—

<sup>4</sup> Eccli. xviii. 30.—<sup>5</sup> s. lii. 4.—<sup>6</sup> Ps. xlix. 21.

even into the deep pit of hell.”<sup>1</sup> And again, speaking of the negligent: “They are corrupted, and made abominable in their pleasures.”<sup>2</sup> But in the desires of the flesh, we ought to believe God to be always present with us, according to that saying of the Prophet, speaking to the Lord: “O Lord, all my desire is before Thee.”<sup>3</sup>

Let us then take heed of evil desires, because death sitteth close to the entrance of delight. Wherefore the Scripture commandeth us: “Follow not thy concupiscences.”<sup>4</sup> If then the eyes of the Lord behold both good and bad; if He ever looketh down from heaven upon the sons of men to see who is understanding or seeking God; if our works are told to Him day and night by our Angel Guardians; we must always take heed, Brethren, lest, as the Prophet saith in the psalm, “God behold us some time declining to evil, and become unprofitable;”<sup>5</sup> and though He spare us for the present, because He is merciful, and expecteth our conversion, He may yet say to us hereafter: “These things thou hast done, and I have held My peace.”<sup>6</sup>

30 Jan.  
31 Maii  
30 Sept. Secundus humilitatis gradus est, si propriam quis non amans voluntatem, desideria sua non delectetur implere; sed vocem illam Domini factis imitetur dicentis: "Non veni facere voluntatem meam, sed ejus qui misit me."<sup>1</sup> Item dicit Scriptura: Voluntas habet pœnam, et necessitas parit coronam.

31 Jan.  
1 Junii.  
1 Oct. Tertius humilitatis gradus est, ut quis pro Dei amore omni obedientia se subdat Majori, imitans Dominum, de quo dicit Apostolus: "Factus obediens usque ad mortem."<sup>2</sup>

1 Feb.  
2 Junii  
2 Oct. Quartus humilitatis gradus est, si in ipsa obedientia duris et contrariis rebus, vel etiam quibuslibet irrogatis injuriis, tacita conscientia patientiam amplectatur, et sustinens non lassescat, vel discedat, dicente Scriptura: "Qui perseveraverit usque in finem, hic salvus erit."<sup>3</sup> Item: "Confortetur cor tuum, et sustine Dominum."<sup>4</sup> Et ostendens, fidelem pro Domino universa etiam contraria sustinere debere, dicit ex persona sufferentium: "Propter te morte afficimur tota die; æstimati sumus sicut oves occisionis."<sup>5</sup> Et securi de

<sup>1</sup> Joan. vi. 38.—<sup>2</sup> Phil. ii. 8. —<sup>3</sup> Matth. xxiv. 13.—

<sup>4</sup> Ps. xxvi. 14.—<sup>5</sup> Ps. xliii. 22.

The second degree of humility is, if anyone, not wedded to his own will, seeks not to satisfy his desires, but carries out that saying of our Lord: "I came not to do My own Will, but the Will of Him Who sent me."<sup>1</sup> The Scripture likewise saith: "Self-will engendereth punishment, and necessity purchaseth a crown."

The third degree of humility is, that a man submit himself for the love of God, with all obedience to his superior, imitating thereby our Lord, of Whom the Apostle saith: "He was made obedient even unto death."<sup>2</sup>

The fourth degree of humility is, that if, in obedience, things that are hard, contrary, and injurious, be done to him, he embrace them with a quiet conscience, and in suffering them, grow not weary, nor give over, since the Scripture saith: "He only that persevereth to the end shall be saved."<sup>3</sup> And again: "Let thy heart be comforted, and expect the Lord."<sup>4</sup> And showing that the faithful man ought to bear all things for our Lord, be they never so contrary, it saith in the person of the sufferers: "For Thee we suffer death all the day long; we are esteemed as sheep for the slaughter."<sup>5</sup> And being assured by hope of a



spe retributionis divinæ, subsequuntur gaudentes, et dicentes: "Sed in his omnibus superamus propter eum, qui dilexit nos." <sup>1</sup> Et item alio loco Scriptura: "Probasti nos (inquit), Deus, igne nos examinasti, sicut igne examinatur argentum: induxisti nos in laqueum; posuisti tribulationes in dorso nostro." <sup>2</sup> Et ut ostendat sub Priore debere nos esse, subsequitur, dicens: "Imposuisti homines super capita nostra." <sup>3</sup> Sed, et præceptum Domini in adversis et injuriis, per patientiam adimplentes, percussi in maxillam, præbent et alteram, auferenti tunicam, dimittunt et pallium, angariati millario, vadunt et duo, <sup>4</sup> cum Paulo Apostolo falsos fratres sustinent et persecutionem, et maledicentes se benedicunt. <sup>5</sup>

<sup>2</sup> Feb. Quintus humilitatis gradus est, si  
<sup>3</sup> Junii  
<sup>3</sup> Oct. omnes cogitationes malas cordi suo advenientes, vel mala a se absconse commissa per humilem confessionem Abbati non celaverit suo. Hortatur nos de hac re Scriptura, dicens: "Revela Domino viam tuam, et spera in eo." <sup>6</sup> Et item dicit: "Confitemini Domino, quoniam

<sup>1</sup> Rom. viii. 37.—<sup>2</sup> Ps. lxxv. 10. 11.—<sup>3</sup> Ibid. 12.—

<sup>4</sup> Matt. v. 39-41.—<sup>5</sup> 2 Cor. xi. 26.—<sup>6</sup> Ps. xxxvi. 5.



reward from God's hands they go on rejoicing and saying: "But in all things we overcome by the help of Him Who hath loved us."<sup>1</sup> Likewise in another place the Scripture saith: "Thou hast proved us, O Lord, Thou hast tried us, as silver is tried, with fire. Thou hast brought us into the snare; Thou hast laid tribulation upon our backs."<sup>2</sup> And to show that we ought to be under a Prior or Superior, it goes on to say: "Thou hast placed men over our heads."<sup>3</sup> Moreover, in order to fulfil the precepts of the Lord by patience in adversities and injuries: "When struck on one cheek, they offer the other; to him who taketh away their coat, they leave their cloak also; and being constrained to carry a burthen one mile, they go two."<sup>4</sup> With Paul the Apostle they suffer false Brethren and persecutions, and bless those who revile and speak ill of them.<sup>5</sup>

The fifth degree of humility is to manifest to the Abbot, by humble confession, all the evil thoughts of his heart, and the secret faults committed by him. The Scripture exhorteth us thereunto, saying: "Reveal thy way to the Lord, and hope in Him."<sup>6</sup> And again: "Confess thy way to the Lord because He is good,

bonus, quoniam in sæculum misericordia ejus.”<sup>1</sup>  
 Et item Propheta : “ Delictum meum cognitum tibi feci, et injustitias meas non operui. Dixi, pronuntiabo adversum me injustitias meas Domino, et tu remisisti impietatem cordis mei.”<sup>2</sup>

<sup>3</sup> Feb. Sextus humilitatis gradus est, si omni  
<sup>4</sup> Junii  
<sup>4</sup> Oct. vilitate vel extremitate contentus sit Monachus, et ad omnia quæ sibi injunguntur, velut operarium malum et indignum se judicet, dicens cum Propheta : “ Ad nihilum redactus sum, et nescivi : ut jumentum factus sum apud te, et ego semper tecum.”<sup>3</sup>

<sup>4</sup> Feb. Septimus humilitatis gradus est, si  
<sup>5</sup> Junii  
<sup>5</sup> Oct. omnibus se inferiorem et viliorem, non solum sua lingua pronuntiet, sed etiam intimo cordis credat affectu, humilians se, et dicens cum Propheta : “ Ego autem sum vermis, et non homo, opprobrium hominum, et abjectio plebis.”<sup>4</sup> Exaltatus sum, et humiliatus, et confusus.”<sup>5</sup> Et item : “ Bonum mihi, quod humiliasti me, ut discam mandata tua.”<sup>6</sup>

<sup>5</sup> Feb. Octavus humilitatis gradus est, si nihil  
<sup>6</sup> Junii  
<sup>6</sup> Oct. agat Monachus, nisi quod communis mo-

<sup>1</sup> Ps. cv. 1.—<sup>2</sup> Ps. xxxi. 5.—<sup>3</sup> Ps. lxxii. 22. 23.—

<sup>4</sup> Ps. xxi. 7.—<sup>5</sup> Ps. lxxxvii. 16.—<sup>6</sup> Ps. cxviii. 71.

because His mercy endureth for ever." <sup>1</sup> Furthermore the Prophet saith: "I have made known unto Thee mine offence, and mine injustices I have not hidden. I have said, I will declare openly against myself mine injustices to the Lord; and Thou hast pardoned the wickedness of my heart." <sup>2</sup>

The sixth degree of humility is, if a Monk be content with all that is meanest and poorest, and in everything enjoined him, think himself an evil and worthless servant, saying with the Prophet: "I have been brought to nothing, and knew it not. I have become as a beast before Thee, and I am always with Thee." <sup>3</sup>

The seventh degree of humility is, not only to pronounce with his tongue, but also in his very heart to believe himself to be the most abject, and inferior to all; and humbling himself, to say with the Prophet: "I am a worm and no man, the reproach of men and the outcast of the people." <sup>4</sup> I have been exalted, humbled, and confounded." <sup>5</sup> And again: "It is good for me that Thou hast humbled me, that I may learn Thy commandments." <sup>6</sup>

The eighth degree of humility is, that a Monk do nothing but what the common rule

nasterii regula, vel Majorum cohortantur exempla.

6 Feb. Nonus humilitatis gradus est, si linguam  
7 Junii  
7 Oct. ad loquendum prohibeat Monachus, et taciturnitatem habens, usque ad interrogationem non loquatur, monstrante Scriptura: quia "in multiloquio non effugietur peccatum;"<sup>1</sup> et quia "vir linguosus non dirigetur super terram."<sup>2</sup>

7 Feb. Decimus humilitatis gradus est, si non  
8 Junii  
8 Oct. sit facilis, ac promptus in risu, quia scriptum est: "Stultus in risu exaltat vocem suam."<sup>3</sup>

8 Feb. Undecimus humilitatis gradus est, si  
9 Junii  
9 Oct. cum loquitur Monachus, leniter et sine risu, humiliter et cum gravitate, vel pauca verba et rationabilia loquatur, et non sit clamorosus in voce; sicut scriptum est: Sapiens verbis innotescit paucis.<sup>4</sup>

9 Feb. Duodecimus humilitatis gradus est, si  
10 Junii  
10 Oct. non solum corde Monachus, sed etiam ipso corpore humilitatem videntibus se semper indicet, id est, in opere, in oratorio, in monasterio, in horto, in via, in agro vel ubicumque sedens, ambulans, vel stans, inclinato sit semper capite, defixis in terram aspectibus, reum se

<sup>1</sup> Prov. x. 19.—<sup>2</sup> Ps. cxxxix. 12.—<sup>3</sup> Eccli. xxi. 23.—

<sup>4</sup> Eccles. x.

of the Monastery, or the example of his seniors, teacheth and exhorteth him to do.

The ninth degree of humility is, for a Monk to refrain his tongue from much speaking, and be silent till a question be asked him, remembering the saying of the Scripture: "In many words thou shalt not avoid sin,"<sup>1</sup> and "a talkative man shall not be directed upon the earth."<sup>2</sup>

The tenth degree of humility is, not to be easily moved and prompt to laugh, for it is written: "The fool exalteth his voice in laughter."<sup>3</sup>

The eleventh degree of humility is that when a Monk speaketh, he do so, gently and without laughter; humbly, with gravity or few words, and discreetly; and be not clamorous in his voice; for it is written: "A wise man is known by few words."<sup>4</sup>

The twelfth degree of humility is, that a Monk not only have humility in his heart, but show it also in his exterior, to all that behold him; so that whether he be at work, or in the Oratory, the garden, the field, or on the way; whether he sit, walk, or stand, let him always, with head bent down, and eyes fixed upon the earth, think himself guilty for his sins, and about to be presented before the dreadful



omni hora de peccatis suis existimans, jam se tremendo Dei judicio præsentari existimet: dicens sibi in corde semper illud, quod Publicanus ille evangelicus, fixis in terram oculis, dixit: "Domine, non sum dignus ego peccator, levare oculos meos ad cælum."<sup>1</sup> Et item cum Propheta: "Incurvatus et humiliatus sum usquequaque."<sup>2</sup>

Ergo his omnibus humilitatis gradibus ascensis, Monachus mox ad charitatem Dei perveniet illam, quæ perfecta foras mittit timorem; per quam universa quæ prius non sine formidine observabat, absque ullo labore velut naturaliter ex consuetudine incipit custodire, non jam timore gehennæ, sed amore Christi et consuetudine ipsa bona, et delectatione virtutum. Quod Dominus in operario suo mundo a vitiis et peccatis, Spiritu sancto dignabitur demonstrare.

<sup>1</sup> Luc. xviii. 13.

<sup>2</sup> Ps. cxviii. 107.



judgment of God, ever saying to himself with the Publican in the Gospel: "Lord, I a sinner am not worthy to lift up mine eyes to heaven."<sup>1</sup> And again with the Prophet: "I am bowed down and humbled on every side."<sup>2</sup>

Thus, when all these degrees of humility have been ascended, the Monk will presently come to that love of God which is perfect and casteth out fear; to that love, whereby everything, which at the beginning he observed through fear, he shall now begin to do by custom, without any labour, and as it were naturally; not now through fear of hell, but for the love of Christ, out of a good custom, and a delight in virtue. All this our Lord will vouchsafe to work by the Holy Ghost in His servant, now that he is cleansed from defects and sins.



## CAPUT VIII.

### DE OFFICIIS DIVINIS IN NOCTIBUS.

<sup>10 Feb.</sup> <sup>11 Junii</sup> <sup>11 Oct.</sup> HYEMIS tempore, id est, a Kalendis No-  
vembris usque ad Pascha, juxta considera-  
tionem rationis,\* octava hora noctis surgendum  
est, ut modice amplius de media nocte pausetur,  
et jam digesti surgant. Quod vero restat post  
Vigilias,<sup>1</sup> a fratribus qui Psalterii vel lectionum  
aliquid indigent, meditationi inserviatur. A  
Pascha autem usque ad supradictas Kalendas  
Novembris, sic temperetur hora Vigiliarum  
agenda, ut parvissimo intervallo, quo fratres

<sup>1</sup> Matins were called *Vigiliae*, because they were said during the night-watches.



## CHAPTER VIII.

### OF THE DIVINE OFFICE AT NIGHT-TIME.

IN winter, that is from the first of November till Easter, they shall rise at that time which sound calculation shall indicate as the eighth hour of the night,\* in order that having rested till a little after midnight, they may rise refreshed. As for the time that remains after Matins,<sup>1</sup> let it be employed in study, by those Brethren who are somewhat behind-hand in the psalter and lessons. But from Easter till

\* Such is the way in which Perez interprets the words "*juxta considerationem rationis.*" For, since the nights are of an unequal length at different seasons of the year, the eighth hour would necessarily vary ; at the Solstice *i.e.*, 21st December, it would be later than at the Equinoxes, *i.e.* 21st March. (*Perez, in Reg : S. Ben : p. 460.*)

76      *De Officiis Divinis in Noctibus.*

ad necessaria naturæ exeant, custodito, mox **Matutini**,<sup>1</sup> qui incipiente luce agendi sunt, subsequantur.

<sup>1</sup> Lauds were called *Matutini*, because said in the early morning.

*Of the Divine Office at Night-time.* 77

the first of November, let the hour for Matins be so arranged, that after a short interval during which they may go forth for the necessities of nature, Lauds<sup>1</sup> may presently follow about the break of day.



## CAPUT IX.

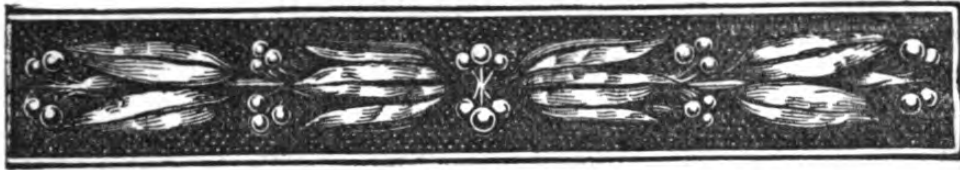
QUOT PSALMI DICENDI SUNT IN NOCTURNIS HORIS.

<sup>11 Feb.</sup> <sup>12 Junii</sup> <sup>12 Oct.</sup> HYEMIS tempore, præmisso in primis versu : “Deus in adjutorium meum intende, Domine ad adjuvandum me festina.”<sup>1</sup> In secundo ter dicendum est : “Domine labia mea aperies, et os meum annunciabit laudem tuam ;”<sup>2</sup> cui subjungendus est tertius Psalmus, et “Gloria.” Post hunc, Psalmus nonagesimus quartus cum Antiphona, aut certe decantandus. Inde sequatur Ambrosianum.\* Deinde sex psalmi cum Antiphonis. Quibus dictis, dicto versu, benedicat Abbas, et sedentibus omnibus in scamnis, legantur vicissim a fratribus in codice super analogium tres Lectiones, inter quas tria Responsoria canantur. Duo Respon-

<sup>1</sup> Ps. lxi. 2.

<sup>2</sup> Ps. l. 17.





## CHAPTER IX.

### HOW MANY PSALMS ARE TO BE SAID IN THE NIGHT-HOURS.

IN winter, having first said the verse, "O God incline unto mine aid, O Lord make haste to help me,"<sup>1</sup> the words, "O Lord open my lips, and my mouth shall declare Thy praise,"<sup>2</sup> are next to be repeated three times. After this the third Psalm is said, with a "Glory be to the Father," at the end. Then the ninety-fourth Psalm is to be recited or sung with an antiphon. Let a hymn \* follow next, and then six psalms with antiphons. These being said, and a versicle added, let the Abbot give a blessing,

\* The Hymn was called Ambrosianum, either because St. Ambrose was the author of many of them, or because they were first sung during his Episcopate, in the Church of Milan.

80 *Quot Psalmi dicendi sunt in nocturnis horis.*

soria sine "Gloria" dicantur. Post tertiam vero Lectionem qui cantat, dicat "Gloria;" quam, dum incipit Cantor dicere, mox omnes de sedilibus surgant ob honorem et reverentiam sanctissimæ Trinitatis.

Codices autem legantur in Vigiliis, tam veteris Testamenti, quam novi divinæ auctoritatis; sed et expositiones earum, quæ a nominatissimis, et orthodoxis, et catholicis Patribus factæ sunt. Post has vero tres Lectiones cum Responsoriis suis, sequantur reliqui sex psalmi cum *Alleluia* cantandi. Post hos Lectio Apostoli sequatur, ex corde recitanda, et Versus, et supplicatio Litaniam, id est, "Kyrie eleison." Et sic finiantur Vigiliæ nocturnæ.

and then, all being seated, let three lessons be read by the Brethren in turns, from the book lying on the lectern. After every lesson, let a responsory be sung. Let two of them be without a "Gloria," but after the third let it be added by the Cantor, and as soon as he has begun it, let all rise from their seats out of honour and reverence to the Holy Trinity.

Let the divinely inspired books, both of the Old and New Testament, be read at Matins, together with the expositions made upon them by the most famous, orthodox, and Catholic Fathers. After these three lessons and their responsories, let six other psalms follow, to be sung with an Alleluia. Then let a lesson from the Apostle be said by heart, and after that a verse and the supplication of the Litanies, that is, "Kyrie eleison." And thus let the Matins or Night-watches be brought to an end.



## CAPUT X.

### QUALITER ÆSTATIS TEMPORE AGATUR NOCTURNA LAUS.

<sup>12 Feb.</sup> A PASCHA autem usque ad Kalendas  
<sup>13 Junii</sup>  
<sup>13 Oct.</sup> Novembris (ut supra dictum est) omnis  
Psalmodiæ quantitas teneatur: excepto, quod  
Lectioes in codice, propter brevitatem noctium,  
minime legantur, sed pro ipsis tribus Lectioni-  
bus, una de veteri Testamento memoriter  
dicatur, quam breve Responsorium subse-  
quatur, et reliqua omnia (ut dictum est)  
impleantur, id est, ut nunquam minus a  
duodecim Psalmorum quantitate ad Vigiliis  
nocturnas dicatur, exceptis tertio et nonagesimo  
quarto Psalmo.



## CHAPTER X.

HOW MATINS, OR NIGHT-OFFICE, IS TO BE CELEBRATED IN SUMMER.

FROM Easter till the first of November, let the same number of psalms be recited, as we have before appointed; but let not the lessons be read, because of the shortness of the nights. Instead of these three lessons, let one out of the Old Testament be said by heart, followed by a short responsory, and let all the rest be performed as we have before arranged, so that without counting the third, and the ninety-fourth psalms, there be never fewer than twelve psalms said at Matins.



## CAPUT XI.

### QUALITER DOMINICIS DIEBUS VIGILÆ AGANTUR.

<sup>13 Feb.</sup> <sup>14 Junii</sup> <sup>14 Oct.</sup> DOMINICO die temperius surgatur ad Vigiliis, in quibus Vigiliis teneatur mensura, id est, modulatis (ut supra disposuimus) sex Psalmis, et Versu, residentibus cunctis disposite et per ordinem in subselliis, legantur in codice (ut supra diximus) quatuor Lectiones cum Responsoriis suis, ubi tantum in Responsorio quarto dicatur a cantante “Gloria;” quam dum incipit, mox omnes cum reverentia surgant. Post quas Lectiones sequantur ex ordine alii sex Psalmi cum Antiphonis, sicut anteriores, et Versus. Post quos iterum dicantur tria Cantica de Prophetis, quæ instituerit Abbas; quæ Cantica cum “Alleluia” psallantur. Dicto etiam Versu, et benedicente Abbate,





## CHAPTER XI.

### HOW MATINS, OR NIGHT-OFFICE, IS TO BE CELEBRATED ON SUNDAYS.

ON Sunday let them rise more seasonably for Matins, and therein observe the following order. When six psalms and the versicle have been sung, as we before arranged, let all sit down in a becoming and orderly manner, and let four lessons with their responsories be read from the book ; to the fourth responsory only, let the Cantor add a "Gloria," at the beginning of which all shall rise out of reverence. After these lessons, let six more psalms follow in order, with their antiphons and versicle as before. Then let four other lessons with their responsories be read in the same way as the former. Next, let three canticles be said out of the Prophets, such as the Abbot

86 *Qualiter Dominicis diebus Vigilice agantur.*

legantur aliæ quatuor Lectiones de novo Testamento, ordine quo supra.

Post quartum autem Responsorium incipiat Abbas Hymnum: "Te Deum laudamus." Quo dicto, legat Abbas Lectionem de Evangelio, cum honore et tremore stantibus omnibus. Qua perlecta, respondeant omnes: "Amen." Et subsequatur mox Abbas Hymnum: "Te decet laus." Et data benedictione incipiant Matutinos. Qui ordo Vigiliarum omni tempore, tam æstatis, quam hyemis, æqualiter in die Dominico teneatur: nisi forte (quod absit) tardius surgatur, quia tunc aliquid de Lectionibus breviandum est, aut Responsois. Quod tamen omnino caveatur, ne proveniat. Quod si contigerit, digne inde satisfaciat Deo in oratorio, per cuius evenerit neglectum.

shall appoint; these must be sung with "Alleluia."

When the versicle has been said, and the Abbot has given his blessing, let four other lessons out of the New Testament be read, in the same order as before.

After the fourth responsory, let the Abbot begin the Hymn "Te Deum laudamus," and this being said, let him read a lesson from the Gospel, while all stand with reverential fear. At the end of this let all answer, "Amen," and then let the Abbot go on with the Hymn: "Te decet laus." Then, after the giving of the blessing, let Lauds begin. This order is always to be observed in singing Matins on Sundays, both in Summer and in Winter, except perchance (which God forbid) they rise late, for then the lessons or responsories must be somewhat shortened. But let good care be taken that this do not happen; and if it do, let him, by whose negligence it comes to pass, make satisfaction for it in the Oratory.

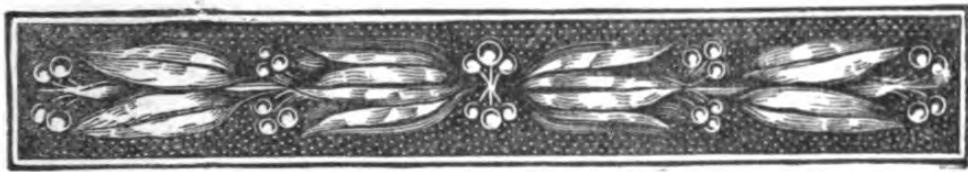


## CAPUT XII.

QUALITER MATUTINORUM SOLEMNITAS AGATUR.

<sup>14 Feb.</sup> IN Matutinis Dominico die, in primis  
<sup>15 Junii</sup>  
<sup>15 Oct.</sup> dicatur sexagesimus sextus Psalmus sine Antiphona in directum; post quem dicatur quinquagesimus cum "Alleluia." Post quem dicatur centesimus decimus septimus, et sexagesimus secundus; deinde "Benedictiones"<sup>1</sup> et "Laudes;"<sup>2</sup> Lectio de Apocalypsi una ex corde, et Responsorium, et Ambrosianum, et Versus, et Canticum de Evangelio, et Litaniae, et completum est.

<sup>1</sup>The Canticle of the Three Children, the "Benedicite."—<sup>2</sup> Psalms cxlviii. cxlix. cl., of which almost every verse begins by the word "Laudate," were called "Laudes."



## CHAPTER XII.

### HOW THE SOLEMNITY OF LAUDS IS TO BE PERFORMED.

FOR Sunday's Lauds, first, let the sixtieth Psalm be said plainly, without an antiphon; after which, say the fiftieth with an "Alleluia;" then the hundred and seventeenth, and the sixty-second; then the "Blessings,"<sup>1</sup> and "Praises,"<sup>2</sup> one lesson out of the Apocalypse said by heart, a responsory, a hymn, a versicle with a canticle out of the Gospel, and the Litanies, and so conclude.



### CAPUT XIII.

PRIVATIS DIEBUS QUALITER MATUTINI AGANTUR.

<sup>15 Feb.</sup> DIEBUS autem privatis Matutinorum  
<sup>16 Junii</sup>  
<sup>16 Oct.</sup> solemnitas ita agatur, id est, sexagesimus sextus Psalmus dicatur sine Antiphona in directum, subtrahendo modice, sicut in Dominica, ut omnes occurrant ad quinquagesimum qui cum Antiphona dicatur. Post quem alii duo Psalmi dicantur, secundum consuetudinem, id est, secunda feria, quintus, et trigesimus quintus. Tertia feria, quadragesimus secundus, et quinquagesimus sextus. Quarta feria, sexagesimus tertius, et sexagesimus quartus. Quinta feria, octogesimus septimus, et octogesimus nonus. Sexta feria, septuagesimus quintus, et nonagesimus primus. Sabbato autem, centesimus quadragesimus secundus, et Canticum Deuteronomii, quod dividatur in





## CHAPTER XIII.

### HOW LAUDS ARE TO BE CELEBRATED ON FERAL OR WEEK DAYS.

ON ferial days, let Lauds be celebrated thus : Let the sixty-sixth Psalm be said as on Sunday, plainly and without an antiphon, and also somewhat more slowly, in order that all may be in their places for the fiftieth, which must be said with an antiphon. After which, let two other psalms be said according to custom ; that is, on Monday, the fifth and thirty-fifth. On Tuesday, the forty-second and fifty-sixth. On Wednesday, the sixty-third and sixty-fourth. On Thursday, the eighty-seventh and eighty-ninth. On Friday, the seventy-fifth and ninety-first. On Saturday, the

92 *Privatis diebus qualiter Matutini agantur.*

duas "Glorias." Nam ceteris diebus, Canticum unumquodque die suo ex Prophetis, sicut psallit Ecclesia Romana, dicatur. Post hæc sequantur Laudes; deinde Lectio una Apostoli memoriter recitanda, Responsorium, Ambrosianum, Versus, Canticum de Evangelio, Litanæ, et completum est.

16 Feb. Plane agenda Matutina, vel Vespertina  
17 Junii  
17 Oct. non transeant aliquando, nisi ultimo per ordinem Oratio Dominica, omnibus audientibus, dicatur a Priore, propter scandalorum spinas, quæ oriri solent, ut conventi per ipsius Orationis sponsonem, qua dicunt: "Dimitte nobis debita nostra, sicut et nos dimittimus debitoribus nostris," purgent se ab hujusmodi vitio. Cæteris vero agendis, ultima pars ejus Orationis dicatur, ut ab omnibus respondeatur: "Sed libera nos a malo."

hundred and forty-second and the Canticle of Deuteronomy, which must be divided into two "Glorias." But on other days, let the Canticle out of the Prophets be said, each on its own day, according to the practice of the Roman Church. After these, let the Praises (that is, the Laudate) follow; then a lesson from the Apostles, to be said by heart, a responsory, hymn, and versicle, a Canticle out of the Gospels, and so conclude.

Let not the celebration of Lauds, or Evensong, ever terminate, unless at the end the Lord's prayer be said by the Prior, in the hearing of all, because of the thorns of scandal which are wont to arise; that the Brethren, being reminded by the covenant of this prayer, in which they say: "Forgive us our trespasses as we forgive them that trespass against us," may purge themselves from these faults. But in celebrating the other hours, let the last part only be said aloud, that all may answer: "But deliver us from evil."



## CAPUT XIV.

### IN NATALITIIS SANCTORUM QUALITER VIGILIÆ AGANTUR.

17 Feb. IN Sanctorum vero festivitibus, vel  
18 Junii  
18 Oct. omnibus solemnitibus, sicut diximus  
Dominico die agendum, ita agatur, excepto  
quod Psalmi, aut Antiphonæ vel Lectiones ad  
ipsum diem pertinentes dicantur. Modus  
autem supradictus teneatur.



## CHAPTER XIV.

IN WHAT MANNER THE OFFICE OF MATINS IS TO BE CELEBRATED ON THE FEAST DAYS OF SAINTS.

ON Saints' days, and upon all solemnities, let the same order be observed as upon Sundays, only that psalms, antiphons, and lessons be said, proper to the day itself. Their number, however, shall remain the same as before determined.



## CAPUT XV.

“ ALLELUIA,” QUIBUS TEMPORIBUS DICATUR.

<sup>18</sup> Feb. A SANCTO Pascha usque ad Pentecosten,  
<sup>19</sup> Junii  
<sup>19</sup> Oct. sine intermissione dicatur “ Alleluia,”  
tam in Psalmis, quam in Responsoriis. A  
Pentecoste usque ad caput Quadragesimæ,  
omnibus noctibus, cum sex posterioribus  
Psalmis tantum ad Nocturnos dicatur. Omni  
vero Dominica extra Quadragesimam, Cantica,  
Matutini, Prima, Tertia, Sexta, Nonaque cum  
“ Alleluia ” dicantur. Vespera vero cum Anti-  
phonis. Responsoria vero nunquam dicantur  
cum Alleluia, nisi a Pascha usque ad Pente-  
costen.





## CHAPTER XV.

AT WHAT SEASONS "ALLELUIA" MUST BE SAID.

FROM the holy feast of Easter until Whitsuntide, let "Alleluia" be said without intermission, as well with the psalms, as with the responsories. From Whitsuntide till the beginning of Lent, let it be said at all the Night-offices, with the six last psalms only. But on every Sunday out of Lent, let the Canticles, Lauds, Prime, Tierce, Sext and None, be said with "Alleluia." Let Even-song, however, be said with antiphons. Let the responsories never be said with "Alleluia," except from Easter till Whitsuntide.



## CAPUT XVI.

### QUALITER DIVINA OPERA PER DIEM AGANTUR.

<sup>19 Feb.</sup> <sup>20 Junii</sup> <sup>20 Oct.</sup> UT ait Propheta : "Septies in die laudem dixi tibi."<sup>1</sup> Qui septenarius sacratus numerus a nobis sic implebitur, si Matutini, Primæ, Tertiae, Sextæ, Nonæ, Vesperi, Completoriique tempore, nostræ servitutis officia persolvamus. Quia de his Horis dixit Propheta : "Septies in die laudem dixi tibi."<sup>1</sup> Nam de nocturnis Vigiliis idem ipse Propheta ait : "Media nocte surgebam ad confitendum tibi."<sup>2</sup> Ergo his temporibus referamus laudes Creatori nostro super judicia justitiæ suæ, id est, Matutinis, Prima, Tertia, Sexta, Nona, Vespera, Completorio, et nocte surgamus ad confitendum ei.

<sup>1</sup> Ps. cxviii. 164.

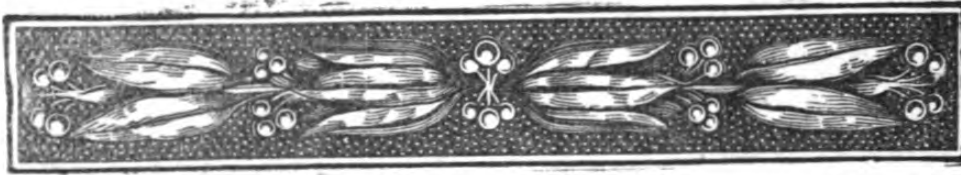
<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 62.



## CHAPTER XVI.

IN WHAT MANNER THE WORK OF GOD IS TO BE  
DONE IN THE DAY TIME.

“SEVEN times a day,” saith the Prophet, “have I sung praises unto Thee.”<sup>1</sup> This sacred number of seven shall be accomplished by us if at the times of Lauds, Prime, Tierce, Sext, None, Even-song, and Complin, we perform the office and duty of our service. It was of these hours the Prophet said: “Seven times in the day I have sung praise to Thee.”<sup>1</sup> For of the Night-watches, or Matins, the same Prophet says: “At midnight I did arise to confess to Thee.”<sup>2</sup> At these times therefore, let us give praise to our Creator for the judgments of His justice; that is at Lauds, Prime, Tierce, Sext, None, Even-song, and Complin; and in the night let us rise to confess unto Him.



## CAPUT XVII.

QUOT PSALMI PER EASDEM HORAS DICENDI SUNT.

20 Feb. JAM de Nocturnis, vel Matutinis diges-  
21 Junii  
21 Oct. simus ordinem Psalmodiæ, nunc de se-  
quentibus Horis videamus. Prima Hora  
dicantur Psalmi tres sigillatim, et non sub  
una "Gloria." Hymnus ejusdem Horæ post  
Versum, "Deus in adjutorium meum intende,"  
antequam Psalmi incipiantur. Post expletio-  
nem vero trium Psalmorum, recitetur Lectio  
una, Versus, et "Kyrie eleison," et missæ sint.  
Tertia vero, Sexta, et Nona, eodem ordine  
celebrentur: Oratio, Versus, Hymni earundem  
Horarum, terni Psalmi, Lectio, Versus, "Kyrie  
eleison," et missæ sint. Si major Congregatio  
fuerit, cum Antiphonis dicantur; si vero  
minor, in directum psallantur.



## CHAPTER XVII.

### HOW MANY PSALMS ARE TO BE SAID DURING THE AFORESAID HOURS.

WE have already arranged the order of the Office for the Nocturns, or Lauds; let us now dispose of the Hours that follow. At Prime, let three psalms be said separately, and not under one "Gloria." Presently after the verse: "O God incline unto mine aid," let the hymn of the same Hour follow, before the psalms be begun. At the end of the psalms, let there be recited one lesson, a versicle, and "Kyrie eleison," and therewith let that Hour conclude. Tierce, Sext and None, are to be recited in the same way; that is, the prayer, versicle, and hymns of these same Hours, three psalms, then a lesson, versicle, and "Kyrie eleison," and so let the Hour conclude. If the Community be great, let the Hours be sung with antiphons; if, however, it be small, let them be

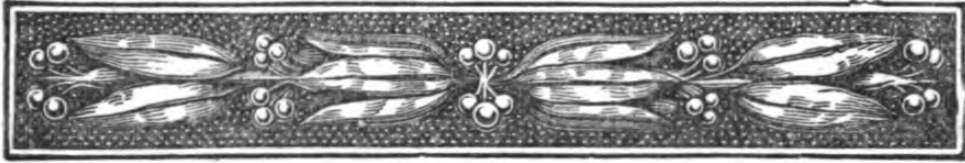
102 *Quot Psalmi per easdem Horas dicendi sunt.*

Vespertina autem synaxis quatuor Psalmis cum Antiphonis terminetur, post quos Psalmos lectio recitanda est, inde Responsorium, Ambrosianum, Versus, Canticum de Evangelio, Litanïæ et Oratio Dominica, et fiant missæ. Completorium autem trium Psalmorum dictione terminetur, qui Psalmi directaneæ et sine Antiphona dicendi sunt. Post quos Hymnus ejusdem Horæ, Lectio una, Versus, "Kyrie eleison" et Benedictio, et missæ fiant.



*How many Psalms are to be said.* 103

only recited. Let Even-song be said with four psalms and antiphons; after these let a lesson be recited, then a responsory, the hymn, versicle, and canticle, out of the Gospel—the Litany, the Lord's Prayer, and so conclude. For Complin, let three psalms be recited straight on without antiphons. After these, the hymn for that Hour, the lesson, versicle, "Kyrie eleison," and blessing, and so let the Hour terminate.



## CAPUT XVIII.

### QUO ORDINE PSALMI DICENDI SUNT.

<sup>21 Feb.</sup> IN Primis semper diurnis Horis dicatur  
<sup>22 Junii</sup>  
<sup>22 Oct.</sup> Versus: "Deus in adiutorium meum  
intende: Domine ad adjuvandum me festina,"  
et "Gloria." Inde Hymnus uniuscujusque  
Horæ. Deinde prima hora, Dominica, dicenda  
sunt quatuor capitula Psalmi centesimi octavi  
decimi. Reliquis vero Horis, id est, Tertia,  
Sexta, et Nona, terna capitula supradicti  
Psalmi centesimi octavi decimi dicantur. Ad  
Primam autem secundæ feriæ dicantur tres  
Psalmi, id est, primus, secundus, et sextus.  
Et ita per singulos dies ad Primam, usque ad  
Dominicam dicantur per ordinem terni Psalmi,  
usque ad nonumdecimum Psalmum; ita sane,  
ut nonus Psalmus et septimus decimus parti-



## CHAPTER XVIII.

### IN WHAT ORDER THE PSALMS ARE TO BE SAID.

IN the day Hours, let the verse "O God incline unto mine aid, O Lord make haste to help me," always be said first, and after it a "Gloria." Then the hymn proper to each Hour. On Sundays, at Prime, there must be said four divisions of the hundred-and-eighteenth Psalm. At the rest of the Hours, to wit, at Tierce, Sext and None, let there be said three divisions of the same hundred-and-eighteenth Psalm. But on Monday at Prime, let three psalms be said, that is, the first, second, and sixth. In the same way at Prime, let three psalms be said in order every day, till Sunday, as far as the nineteenth Psalm; yet in such a way that the ninth and seventeenth Psalms be divided

106 *Quo ordine Psalmi dicendi sunt.*

antur in binas "Gloria." Et sic fiat, ut ad Vigilias Dominica semper a vigesimo incipiatur.

22 Feb.  
23 Junii  
23 Oct. Ad Tertiam vero, et Sextam, et Nonam secundæ feriæ novem capitula, quæ residua sunt de centesimo decimo octavo Psalmo, ipsa terna capitula per easdem Horas dicantur. Expenso igitur Psalmo centesimo octavo decimo duobus diebus, id est, Dominica et secunda feria, tertia feria jam ad Tertiam, Sextam, vel Nonam psallantur terni Psalmi, a centesimo nono decimo usque ad centesimum vigesimum septimum, id est, Psalmi novem. Quique Psalmi semper usque ad Dominicam per easdem Horas itidem repetantur: Hymnorum nihilominus, Lectionum vel Versuum dispositione uniformi cunctis diebus servata, et ita scilicet, ut semper Dominica a centesimo octavo decimo incipiatur.

23 Feb.  
24 Junii  
24 Oct. Vespera autem quotidie quatuor Psalmorum modulatione canatur. Qui Psalmi incipientur a centesimo nono usque ad centesimum quadragesimum septimum: exceptis iis, qui in diversis Horis ex eis sequestrantur, id est, a centesimo decimo septimo, usque ad centesimum vigesimum septimum, et centesimo trigesimo tertio, et centesimo quadragesimo secundo. Reliqui omnes in Vespera dicendi

*In what order the Psalms are to be said.* 107

into two "Glorias." Thus it will fall out that on Sunday at Matins we shall always begin from the twentieth Psalm.

At Tierce, Sext, and None, on Mondays, let the remaining nine divisions of the hundred-and-eighteenth Psalm be said, three at a time, during these same Hours. On two days therefore, to wit, Sunday and Monday, the hundred-and-eighteenth Psalm being gone through, let the psalms at Tierce, Sext, and None, on Tuesdays be sung in order, three at a time, from the hundred-and-nineteenth to the hundred-and-twenty-seventh, that is nine psalms. These psalms are always to be repeated at the same Hours for the rest of the week till Sunday; a uniform order also of the hymns, lessons, and versicles, being every day observed, so that every Sunday they may begin with the hundred-and-eighteenth Psalm.

Even-song is to be sung every day with four psalms, which are to begin from the hundred-and-ninth, and go on to the hundred-and-forty-seventh, such only being excepted as are set apart for other Hours, that is, from the hundred-and-seventeenth, to the hundred-and-twenty-seventh, and from the hundred-and-thirty-third to the hundred-and-forty-

sunt. Et quia minus veniunt tres Psalmi, ideo dividendi sunt, qui in numero superscripto fortiores inveniuntur: id est, centesimus trigesimus octavus, et centesimus quadragesimus tertius, et centesimus quadragesimus quartus. Centesimus vero sextus decimus, quia parvus est, cum centesimo quinto decimo jungatur. Digesto ergo ordine Psalmorum Vespertinorum, reliqua, id est, Lectiones, Responsoria, Hymni, Versus, vel Cantica, sicut supra taxavimus, impleantur. Ad Completorium vero quotidie iidem Psalmi repetantur; id est quartus, nonagesimus, et centesimus trigesimus tertius.

23 Feb. si fuerit bis-sextilis; alias jungitur præcedenti.  
25 Junii  
25 Oct.

Disposito ordine Psalmodiæ diurnæ, reliqui omnes Psalmi, qui supersunt, æqualiter dividantur in septem noctium Vigilias, partiendo scilicet qui inter eos prolixiores sunt Psalmi, et duodecim per unamquamque constituentur noctem. Hoc præcipue commonentes, ut si cui forte hæc distributio Psalmorum displicuerit, ordinet, si melius aliter judicaverit, dum omnimodis id attendatur, ut omni hebdomada Psalterium ex integro numero centum quinquaginta Psalmorum psallatur, et Dominico die semper a capite repetatur ad Vigilias: quia nimis iners devo-



*In what order the Psalms are to be said.* 109

second; all the rest are to be said in Even-song. And because there fall three psalms short, those of the aforesaid number that are longer, must be divided, that is, the hundred-and-thirty-eighth, the hundred-and-forty-third, and the hundred-and-forty-fourth. But let the hundred-and-sixteenth, because it is short, be joined with the hundred-and-fifteenth.

The order, therefore, of the psalms for Even-song being set down, let other matters such as lessons, responsories, hymns, versicles, and canticles, be arranged as before. At Complin let the same psalms be repeated every day: that is, the fourth, ninetieth, and the hundred-and-thirty-third. The order of the day office being thus disposed of, let all the psalms which remain be equally portioned out into seven Night-Watches, or Matins, and such of them as are too long, divided into two. Let twelve psalms be appointed for every night. If this arrangement and distribution of the psalms displease anyone, let him, if he think good, order them otherwise, provided however he take care, that every week the whole psalter of one hundred-and-fifty psalms be sung; and that on Sunday at Matins, they begin it again; for Monks show themselves to

110 *Quo ordine Psalmi dicendi sunt.*

tionis suæ servitium ostendunt Monachi, qui minus Psalterio, cum Canticis consuetudinariis, per septimanæ circulum psallunt; cum legamus, sanctos Patres nostros uno die hoc strenue implevisse, quod nos tepidi utinam septimana integra persolvamus.

*In what order the Psalms are to be said. 111*

be over negligent and indevout, who do not in the course of a week sing over the psalter with the usual canticles, since we read that our holy Fathers courageously performed in one day, what, God grant, that we, who are negligent and tepid, may perform in a whole week.



## CAPUT XIX.

### DE DISCIPLINA PSALLENDI.

<sup>24 Feb.</sup> <sup>26 Junii</sup> <sup>26 Oct.</sup> UBIQUE credimus divinam esse præsentiam, et oculos Domini in omni loco speculari bonos et malos: maxime tamen hoc sine aliqua dubitatione credimus, cum ad opus divinum assistimus. Ideo semper memores simus quod ait Propheta: "Servite Domino in timore."<sup>1</sup> Et iterum: "Psallite sapienter."<sup>2</sup> Et: "In conspectu Angelorum psallam tibi."<sup>3</sup> Ergo consideremus, qualiter oporteat nos in conspectu divinitatis et Angelorum esse, et sic stemus ad psallendum, ut mens nostra concordet voci nostræ.

<sup>1</sup> Ps. ii. 11.      <sup>2</sup> Ps. xlvi. 8.      <sup>3</sup> Ps. cxxxvii. 1.



## CHAPTER XIX.

### OF THE ORDER AND DISCIPLINE OF SINGING.

WE believe that the Divine Presence is everywhere, and that the eyes of the Lord behold both the good and the bad, in all places; but we believe this especially and without any doubt, when we assist at the Work of God. Let us, therefore, always be mindful of what the Prophet saith: "Serve ye the Lord in fear."<sup>1</sup> And again: "Sing ye His praises with understanding."<sup>2</sup> And: "In the sight of Angels I will sing praise unto Thee."<sup>3</sup> Therefore, let us consider in what manner and with what reverence it behoveth us to be in the sight of God and of the Angels, and so let us sing in choir, that mind and voice may accord together.



## CAPUT XX.

### DE REVERENTIA ORATIONIS.

25 Feb. SI cum hominibus potentibus volumus  
27 Junii aliqua suggerere, non præsumus, nisi  
27 Oct. cum humilitate, et reverentia: quanto magis  
Domino Deo universorum cum omni humili-  
tate, et puritatis devotione supplicandum est?  
Et non in multiloquio, sed in puritate cordis,  
et compunctione lacrymarum nos exaudiri  
sciamus.<sup>1</sup> Et ideo brevis debet esse et pura  
oratio; nisi forte ex affectu inspirationis  
divinæ gratiæ protendatur. In Conventu  
tamen omnino brevietur oratio, et facto signo  
a Priore, omnes pariter surgant.

<sup>1</sup> Matth. vi. 7.





## CHAPTER XX.

### OF REVERENCE AT PRAYER.

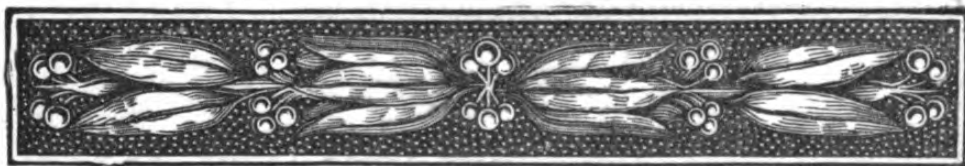
IF, when we wish to make some suggestion to the powerful, we presume not to speak to them except with humility and reverence; with how much greater reason ought we to present our supplications in all humility and purity of devotion, to the Lord God of all things? And let us bear in mind, that we shall be heard, not for our many words, but for our purity of heart, and our penitential tears.<sup>1</sup> Our prayer, therefore, ought to be short and pure, unless perchance it be prolonged by the inspiration of Divine Grace. Yet, let all prayer made in common be short, and when the sign has been given by the Prior, let all rise together.



## CAPUT XXI.

### DE DECANIS MONASTERII.

<sup>26 Feb.</sup> <sup>28 Junii</sup> <sup>28 Oct.</sup> SI major fuerit Congregatio, eligantur de ipsis fratres boni testimonii et sanctæ conversationis, et constituentur Decani: qui sollicitudinem gerant super Decanias suas in omnibus, secundum mandata Dei et præcepta Abbatis sui. Qui Decani tales eligantur, in quibus securus Abbas partiatur onera sua, et non eligantur per ordinem, sed secundum vitæ meritum, et sapientiæ doctrinam. Quod si quis ex eis aliqua forte inflatus superbia repertus fuerit reprehensibilis; correptus semel, et iterum, et tertio, si emendare noluerit, dejiciatur, et alter in loco ejus, qui dignus est, subrogetur. Et de Præposito eadem constitui-  
mus.



## CHAPTER XXI.

### OF THE DEANS OF THE MONASTERY.

IF the Community be large, let men of good repute and saintly lives be chosen from among the Brethren, and appointed Deans, to be careful over their Deaneries in all things, according to the command of God, and the precepts of their Abbot. Let such men be chosen for Deans as the Abbot may safely rely upon to share his burthens; and let them not be chosen by order, but according to the merit of their lives and learning. And if perchance any of them, being puffed up with pride, shall be found blameworthy, and being thrice rebuked, shall show no sign of amendment, let him be put out of office, and a more worthy man substituted in his place. Concerning the Provost, we make the same ordinance.



## CAPUT XXII.

### QUOMODO DORMIANT MONACHI.

27 Feb. SINGULI per singulos lectos dormiant.  
29 Junii  
29 Oct. Lectisternia pro modo conversationis,  
secundum dispensationem Abbatis sui, singuli  
accipiant. Si potest fieri, omnes in uno loco  
dormiant: si autem multitudo non sinit, deni,  
aut viceni cum Senioribus suis, qui super eos  
solliciti sint, pausent. Candela jugiter in  
eadem cella ardeat usque mane.

Vestiti dormiant, et cincti cingulis aut  
funibus, et cultellos ad latus non habeant dum  
dormiunt, ne forte per somnium vulnerentur  
dormientes: et ut parati sint Monachi semper;  
et facto signo absque mora surgentes, festinent  
invicem se praevenire ad opus Dei, cum omni  
tamen gravitate, et modestia. Adolescentiores



## CHAPTER XXII.

### HOW THE MONKS ARE TO SLEEP.

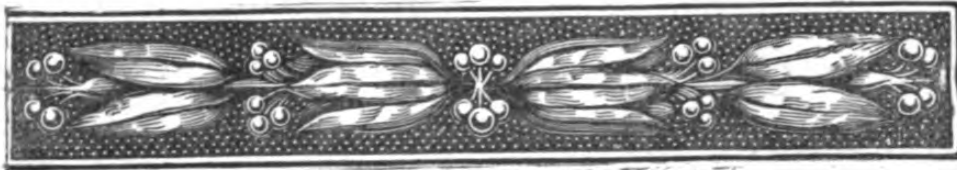
LET them sleep, each in separate beds, and receive, according to the appointment of the Abbot, bed-clothes befitting their condition. If it be possible, let them all sleep in one place; but if the number do not allow of this, let them repose by tens or twenties in one place with their Seniors who have care of them. And let a candle burn constantly in that same cell until morning. Let them sleep clothed, and girt with girdles or cords, but let them not have knives by their sides while they sleep, lest perchance they be hurt therewith; and thus let the Monks always be ready, that when the sign is given they may rise speedily, and hasten, each one, to come

fratres juxta se non habeant lectos, sed permixti cum Senioribus. Surgentes vero ad Opus Dei, invicem se moderate cohortentur, propter somnolentorum excusationes.



before his Brother to the work of God, but yet with all gravity and modesty.

Let not the younger Brethren have beds in a place apart by themselves, but separated among the Elders. And when they rise to the Work of God, let them gently encourage one another, because of the excuses of those who are sluggish.



## CAPUT XXIII.

### DE EXCOMMUNICATIONE CULPARUM.

28 Feb. SI quis frater contumax, aut inobediens,  
30 Junii  
30 Oct. aut superbus, aut murmurans, vel in aliquo contrarius existens sanctæ Regulæ, et præceptis Seniorum suorum contemptor repertus fuerit; hic secundum Domini nostri præceptum admoneatur semel, et secundo secrete a Senioribus suis. Si non emendaverit, objurgetur publice coram omnibus. Si vero neque sic correxerit, si intelligit, qualis pœna sit, excommunicationi subjaceat. Sin autem improbus est, vindictæ corporali subdatur.



## CHAPTER XXIII.

### OF EXCOMMUNICATION FOR OFFENCES.

IF any Brother be found stubborn, disobedient, proud, murmuring, or in any way gainsaying the holy Rule, or contemning the orders of his Elders, let him, in accordance with the precept of the Lord, be once or twice secretly admonished by them. If he amend not, let him be reprehended publicly before all. But if in spite of all this he do not correct himself, let him be subjected to excommunication, provided he understand the nature of the punishment. But if he remain obstinate, let him undergo corporal chastisement.



## CAPUT XXIV.

### QUALIS DEBEAT ESSE MODUS EXCOMMUNICACIONIS.

<sup>1 Mar.</sup>  
<sup>1 Julii</sup>  
<sup>31 Oct.</sup> SECUNDUM modum culpæ, excommunicationis, vel disciplinæ debet extendi mensura: qui culparum modus in Abbatis pendeat iudicio. Si quis tamen frater in levioribus culpis invenitur, tantum a mensæ participatione privetur. Privati autem a mensæ consortio, ista erit ratio: ut in Oratorio Psalmum, aut Antiphonam non imponat, neque Lectionem recitet, usque ad satisfactionem. Refectionem autem cibi post fratrum refectionem accipiat, mensura vel hora qua præviderit Abbas ei competere: ut si verbi gratia fratres reficiunt sexta hora, ille frater nona; si fratres nona, ille vespertina; usque dum satisfactione congrua veniam consequatur.



## CHAPTER XXIV.

### WHAT THE MANNER OF EXCOMMUNICATION OUGHT TO BE.

THE measure of excommunication or punishment should be meted out according to the quality of the faults ; but the estimation of their gravity shall depend upon the judgment of the Abbot. If any Brother be found guilty of small faults, let him be deprived of eating at table with the rest. The manner of his punishment shall be as follows : In the Oratory he shall not intone a psalm or antiphon, nor read a lesson, until he has made satisfaction. He shall take his portion of food after the Brethren have taken theirs, in such quantity, and at such time as the Abbot shall deem fit. If, for example, the Brethren take their refectation at the sixth hour, let him take his at the ninth ; if the Brethren take theirs at the ninth, let him take his in the evening, until by due satisfaction he obtain pardon.



## CAPUT XXV.

### DE GRAVIORIBUS CULPIS.

2 Mar.  
2 Julii  
1 Nov. Is frater, qui gravioris culpæ noxa tene-  
tur, suspendatur a mensa simul et ab  
Oratorio. Nullus ei fratrum in ullo jungatur  
consortio, neque in colloquio. Solus sit ad  
opus sibi injunctum, persistens in pœnitentiæ  
luctu, sciens illam terribilem Apostoli senten-  
tiam dicentis: traditum hujusmodi hominem  
Satanæ in interitum carnis, ut spiritus salvus  
sit in die Domini.<sup>1</sup> Cibi autem refectionem  
solus percipiat, mensura vel hora qua præviderit  
ei Abbas competere: nec a quoquam benedicatur  
transeunte, nec cibus, qui ei datur.

<sup>1</sup> 1 Cor. v. 5.





## CHAPTER XXV.

### OF MORE GRIEVOUS FAULTS.

LET that Brother who is guilty of more grievous faults be denied both the table and the Oratory. Let none of the Brethren discourse with him, nor keep him company. Let him be alone at the work enjoined him, continuing in penance and sorrow, knowing that terrible sentence of the Apostle, who saith, "That such a one is delivered over to Satan for the destruction of the flesh, that his spirit may be saved in the day of our Lord."<sup>1</sup> Let him take his portion of food alone, in such measure and at such time as the Abbot shall think fit: let not any one bless him as he passes by, nor the food that is given to him.



## CAPUT XXVI.

DE IIS, QUI SINE JUSSIONE ABBATIS JUNGUNTUR  
EXCOMMUNICATIS.

3 Mar. SI quis Frater præsumpserit sine jus-  
3 Julii sione Abbatis, fratri excommunicato  
2 Nov. quolibet modo se jungere, aut loqui cum eo,  
vel mandatum ei dirigere, similem sortiatur  
excommunicationis vindictam.



## CHAPTER XXVI.

OF THOSE WHO KEEP COMPANY WITH THE EX-COMMUNICATED WITHOUT THE COMMAND OF THE ABBOT.

IF any Brother shall presume, without the command of the Abbot, to join himself in any way to the excommunicated Brother, or to talk with him, or send him a message, let him incur the same penalty of excommunication.



## CAPUT XXVII.

QUALITER DEBEAT ESSE SOLLICITUS ABBAS  
CIRCA EXCOMMUNICATOS.

<sup>4 Mar.</sup> OMNI sollicitudine curam gerat Abbas  
<sup>4 Julii</sup>  
<sup>3 Nov.</sup> circa delinquentes fratres: quia “non est  
opus sanis medicus, sed male habentibus.”<sup>1</sup>  
Et ideo uti debet omni modo ut sapiens me-  
dicus: immittere quasi occultos consolatores  
Sympæctas, id est, seniores sapientes fratres,  
qui quasi secrete consolentur fratrem fluctuan-  
tem, et provocent eum ad humilitatis satisfac-  
tionem, et consolentur eum, ne abundantiori  
tristitia absorbeatur; sed sicut ait Apostolus:  
“Confirmetur in eo charitas, et oretur pro eo  
ab omnibus.”<sup>2</sup>

Magnopere enim debet sollicitudinem gerere

<sup>1</sup> Matth. ix. 12.

<sup>2</sup> 2 Cor. ii. 8.



## CHAPTER XXVII.

### HOW THE ABBOT OUGHT TO CARE FOR THE EXCOMMUNICATED.

LET the Abbot have a special care of the offending Brethren, for, "They that are well need not the physician, but they that are sick."<sup>1</sup> He ought, therefore, like a wise physician, to use every means in their regard, and covertly send them as comforters, some elderly and discreet Brothers to console, as it were secretly, the wavering one, and win him to make humble satisfaction. Let them comfort him, that he be not swallowed up by overmuch sorrow, but as the Apostle saith: "Let charity be confirmed towards him, and let all pray for him."<sup>2</sup>

The Abbot ought especially to have a care for the offending Brethren, and with all pru-

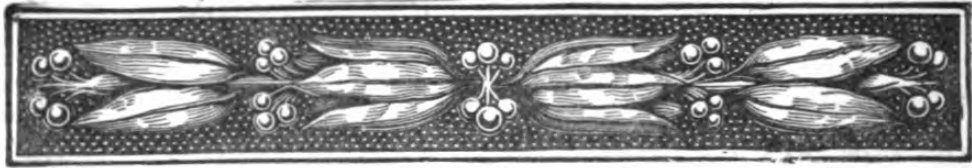
Abbas circa delinquentes fratres, et omni sagacitate et industria curare, ne aliquam de ovibus sibi creditis perdat. Noverit enim se infirmarum curam suscepisse animarum, non super sanas tyrannidem : et metuat Prophetæ comminationem, per quem dicit Deus : “ Quod crassum videbatis, assumebatis : et quod debile erat, projiciebatis.”<sup>1</sup> Et Pastoris boni pium imitetur exemplum, qui relictis nonaginta novem ovibus in montibus, abiit unam ovem, quæ erraverat, quærere ; cujus infirmitati in tantum compassus est, ut eam in sacris humeris suis dignaretur imponere, et sic reportare ad gregem.”<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Ezech. xxxiv. 3.

<sup>2</sup> Luc. xv. 4.



dence and industry, to see that he lose none of the sheep committed to his charge. Let him know that he hath undertaken the care of sick souls, and not a tyrannical authority over such as are well. Let him fear the threat of the Prophet, by whom God saith : “ What ye saw to be fat, that ye took to yourselves, and what was diseased, that ye threw away.”<sup>1</sup> Let him imitate the loving kindness of the “ Good Shepherd,” Who “ leaving ninety-nine sheep in the mountains, went to seek one that had gone astray, on whose infirmity He took such compassion, that He vouchsafed to lay it on His own shoulders, and thus carry it back to the flock.”<sup>2</sup>



## CAPUT XXVIII.

DE IIS, QUI SÆPIUS CORRECTI NON EMENDANTUR.

5 Mar. SI quis frater frequenter correptus pro  
5 Julii  
4 Nov. qualibet culpa, si etiam excommunicatus  
non emendaverit, acrior ei accedat correctio, id  
est, ut verberum vindicta in eum procedat.  
Quod si nec ita se correxerit, aut forte (quod  
absit) in superbiam elatus etiam defendere  
voluerit opera sua, tunc Abbas faciat quod  
sapiens medicus : si exhibuit fomenta, si  
unguenta adhortationum, si medicamina Scrip-  
turarum divinarum, si ad ultimum ustionem  
excommunicationis, vel plagas virgarum, et  
jam si viderit nihil suam prævalere industriam;  
adhibeat etiam (quod majus est) suam et  
omnium fratrum pro eo orationem, ut Domi-  
nus, qui omnia potest, operetur salutem circa  
infirmum fratrem. Quod si nec isto modo



## CHAPTER XXVIII.

OF THOSE WHO, BEING OFTEN CORRECTED, DO  
NOT AMEND.

IF any Brother after being corrected, or even excommunicated for any fault, doth not amend, let a sharper correction be administered to him; that is to say, let him be punished with stripes. But if for all that he do not correct himself, or being puffed up with pride (which God forbid) shall also defend his doings; then let the Abbot act like a wise physician, and after applying the fomentations and ointments of good exhortation, the medicines of the Divine Scriptures, and last of all the punishment of excommunication and of scourging; then, if he find that his labours have no effect,—let him add what is more than all this,—his own prayer, and the prayer of the Brethren for

136 *De iis, qui sæpius correcti non emendantur.*

sanatus fuerit, tunc jam utatur Abbas ferro abscissionis, ut ait Apostolus: "Auferte malum ex vobis." <sup>1</sup> Et iterum: "Infidelis si discedit, discedat:" <sup>2</sup> ne una ovis morbida omnem gregem contaminet.

<sup>1</sup> 1 Cor. v. 13.

<sup>2</sup> 1 Cor. vii. 15.

him, that the Lord, Who can do all things, would vouchsafe to work a cure upon the infirm Brother. If he be not healed and corrected by this means, then let the Abbot use the sword of separation, according to that saying of the Apostle: "Put away the evil one from among you."<sup>1</sup> And again: "If the faithless one depart, let him depart,<sup>2</sup> lest one diseased sheep should infect the whole flock."



## CAPUT XXIX.

### SI DEBEANT ITERUM RECIPI FRATRES EXEUNTES DE MONASTERIO.

**6 Mar.** FRATER, qui proprio vitio egreditur, aut  
**6 Julii** projicitur de Monasterio, si reverti volue-  
**5 Nov.** rit, spondeat prius omnem emendationem vitii  
pro quo egressus est, et sic in ultimo gradu  
recipiatur, ut ex hoc ejus humilitas compro-  
betur. Quod si denuo exierit, usque tertio  
recipiatur. Jam vero postea sciat, omnem sibi  
reversionis aditum denegari.



## CHAPTER XXIX.

WHETHER THE BRETHREN WHO LEAVE THE  
MONASTERY OUGHT TO BE RECEIVED AGAIN.

IF that Brother, who through his own fault leaveth, or is cast out of the Monastery, be willing to return, he shall first promise to amend the fault for which he went forth; then let him be received into the lowest rank, that by this, his humility may be tried. If he go out again, let him be received back till the third time. But after this let him know that all entrance will be denied him.





## CAPUT XXX.

DE PUERIS MINORI ÆTATE, QUALITER CORRIPI-  
ANTUR.

<sup>7. Mar.</sup> OMNIS ætas vel intellectus proprias debet  
<sup>7. Julii</sup>  
<sup>6 Nov.</sup> habere mensuras. Ideoque quoties pueri,  
vel adolescentiores ætate, aut qui minus intel-  
ligere possunt, quanta pœna sit excommunica-  
tionis, hi tales dum delinquent, aut jejuniis  
nimiis affligantur, aut acribus verberibus co-  
erceantur, ut sanentur.



## CHAPTER XXX.

### HOW CHILDREN ARE TO BE CORRECTED.

EVERY age and understanding ought to have a measure of government suitable to it. As often therefore as children, or those under age, commit faults, and are incapable of understanding the greatness of the punishment of excommunication, let them be punished by rigorous fasting, or sharp stripes, that so they may be corrected.



## CAPUT XXXI.

### DE CELLERARIO MONASTERII.

8 Mar. CELLERARIUS Monasterii eligatur de  
8 Julii  
7 Nov. congregatione sapiens, maturus moribus,  
sobrius, non multum edax, non elatus, non  
turbulentus, non injuriosus, non tardus, non  
prodigus, sed timens Deum, qui omni Congre-  
gationi sit sicut pater. Curam gerat de omni-  
bus: sine jussione Abbatis nihil faciat. Quæ  
jubentur, custodiat: Fratres non contristet.  
Si quis autem frater ab eo forte aliquid irra-  
tionabiliter postulat, non spernendo eum con-  
tristet, sed rationabiliter cum humilitate male  
petenti deneget.

Animam suam custodiat, memor semper  
illius Apostolici præcepti, quia "qui bene



## CHAPTER XXXI.

### WHAT KIND OF MAN THE CELLARER OF THE MONASTERY OUGHT TO BE.

LET there be chosen out of the Community as Cellarer of the Monastery, a man who is wise, ripe in manners, and sober; not a great eater, not haughty, nor hasty, nor insulting; not slow, nor wasteful, but fearing God, and acting as a father to the whole Brotherhood. Let him have care of all things, and without the command of the Abbot do nothing. Let him take heed of all that is ordered, and not sadden his Brethren. But if any Brother shall perchance ask anything of him that is not reasonable, let him not, by contemptuously spurning, grieve him, but reasonably and with all humility refuse what he asks for amiss.

Let him have regard for his own soul, mind-

ministraverit, gradum bonum sibi acquirit.”<sup>1</sup> Infirmorum, infantium, hospitem, pauperumque cum omni sollicitudine curam gerat, sciens sine dubio, quia pro his omnibus in die iudicii rationem redditurus est. Omnia vasa Monasterii cunctamque substantiam, ac si altaris vasa sacrata conspiciat. Nihil ducat negligendum: neque avaritiæ studeat, neque prodigus sit, aut extirpator substantiæ Monasterii; sed omnia mensurate faciat, et secundum jussionem Abbatis sui.

<sup>9 Mar.</sup> Humilitatem ante omnia habeat, et cui  
<sup>9 Julii.</sup> substantia non est quæ tribuatur, sermo  
<sup>8 Nov.</sup> responsionis porrigatur bonus, quia scriptum est: “Sermo bonus super datum optimum.”<sup>2</sup> Omnia quæ ei injunxerit Abbas, ipse habeat sub cura sua; a quibus eum prohibuerit, non præsumat. Fratribus constitutam annonam sine aliquo typo vel mora offerat, ut non scandalizentur, memor divini eloquii, quid mereatur “qui scandalizaverit unum de pusillis.”<sup>3</sup> Si Congregatio major fuerit, solatia ei dentur, a quibus adjutus, et ipse æquo animo impleat officium sibi commissum. Horis competen-

<sup>1</sup> 1 Tim. iii. 13.    <sup>2</sup> Eccli. xviii. 17.    <sup>3</sup> Matt. xviii. 6.

ful of that rule of the Apostle: "They that have ministered well, shall purchase for themselves a good degree."<sup>1</sup> Let him care diligently for the sick, the children, the guests, and the poor; knowing, without doubt, that for all these he shall give an account on the dreadful judgment day. Let him look upon all the vessels and goods of the Monastery as if they were the sacred vessels of the Altar. Let him neglect nothing; neither let him be covetous, nor prodigal, nor wasteful of the good of the Monastery, but do all things with moderation, and according to the command of his Abbot.

Above all things, let him have humility, and give at least a gentle answer unto him, on whom he hath nothing else to bestow; for it is written: "A good word is above the best gift."<sup>2</sup> Let him have under his care all that the Abbot shall appoint, and presume not to meddle with anything from which he shall forbid him. Let him give to the Brethren their appointed allowance of food, without arrogance or delay, that they be not scandalized; mindful of that divine word which tells what punishment he deserves "Who shall scandalize one of these little ones."<sup>3</sup> If the

tibus dentur quæ danda sunt, et petantur quæ petenda sunt: ut nemo perturbetur, neque contristetur in domo Dei.



Community be large, let there be given to him helpers, by whose aid he may quietly perform the office committed to his charge. Let such things as are to be given or asked for, be given and asked for at suitable hours, that no one may be troubled or saddened in the House of God.



## CAPUT XXXII.

### DE FERRAMENTIS, VEL REBUS MONASTERII.

<sup>10 Mar.</sup> <sup>10 Julii</sup> <sup>9 Nov.</sup> SUBSTANTIÆ Monasterii in ferramentis, vel vestibus, seu quibuslibet rebus, provideat Abbas fratres, de quorum vita et moribus securus sit: et iis singula, ut utile judicaverit, consignet custodienda, atque recolligenda. Ex quibus Abbas Breve teneat: ut dum sibi in ipsa assignata fratres vicissim succedunt, sciat quid dat, aut quid recipit. Si quis autem sordide aut negligenter res Monasterii tractaverit, corripiatur; si non emendaverit, disciplinæ regulari subjaceat.



## CHAPTER XXXII.

### OF THE IRON TOOLS, OR GOODS OF THE MONASTERY.

FOR keeping the iron tools, clothes, or other goods belonging to the Monastery, let the Abbot appoint Brethren, of whose life and conversation he may be sure, and to them let him allot all things to be kept, as he shall judge most expedient. Of these let the Abbot keep a list, that as the Brethren succeed each other, he may know what he gives and what he receives. If any one shall use the property of the Monastery in a slovenly or negligent manner, let him be rebuked. If he does not amend, let him be subjected to regular discipline.



## CAPUT XXXIII.

SI QUID DEBEANT MONACHI PROPRIUM HABERE.

<sup>11 Mar.</sup>  
<sup>11 Julii</sup>  
<sup>10 Nov.</sup> PRÆCIPUE hoc vitium radicitus ampu-  
tetur de Monasterio, ne quis præsumat  
aliquid dare aut accipere sine jussione Ab-  
batis, neque aliquid habere proprium, nullam  
omnino rem, neque codicem, neque tabulas,  
neque graphium, sed nihil omnino: quippe  
quibus nec corpora sua, nec voluntates licet  
habere in propria potestate. Omnia vero  
necessaria a Patre Monasterii sperare; nec  
quicquam liceat habere, quod Abbas non de-  
derit aut permiserit. Omniaque omnibus sint  
communia, ut scriptum est,<sup>1</sup> “nec quisquam  
suum esse aliquid dicat aut præsumat.” Quod  
si quisquam hoc nequissimo vitio deprehensus  
fuerit delectari, admoneatur semel et iterum:  
si non emendaverit, correctioni subjaceat.

<sup>1</sup> Act iv. 32.



## CHAPTER XXXIII.

### WHETHER MONKS OUGHT TO HAVE ANYTHING OF THEIR OWN.

ESPECIALLY let this vice be cut away from the Monastery by the very roots, that no one presume, without leave of the Abbot, to give, or receive, or hold as his own, anything whatsoever, either book, or tablets, or pen, or anything at all; because they are men whose very bodies and wills are not in their own power. But all that is necessary they may hope for from the Father of the Monastery; nor can they keep anything which the Abbot has not given or allowed. Let all things be common to all, as it is written: "Neither did any one say or think that aught was his own."<sup>1</sup> If any one shall be found given to this most wicked vice, let him be admonished once or twice, and if he do not amend, let him be subjected to correction.



## CAPUT XXXIV.

SI OMNES DEBEANT ÆQUALITER NECESSARIA  
ACCIPERE.

12 Mar.  
12 Julii  
11 Nov. SICUT scriptum est: "Dividebatur singulis, prout cuique opus erat."<sup>1</sup> Ubi non dicimus, quod personarum (quod absit) acceptio sit, sed infirmitatum consideratio. Ubi qui minus indiget, agat Deo gratias, et non contristetur: qui vero plus indiget, humilietur pro infirmitate, et non extollatur pro misericordia, et ita omnia membra erunt in pace. Ante omnia, ne murmurationis malum pro qualicumque causa, in aliquo qualicumque verbo vel significatione appareat. Quod si deprehensus fuerit quis, districtiori disciplinæ subdatur.

<sup>1</sup> Act. iv. 35.



## CHAPTER XXXIV.

### WHETHER ALL OUGHT EQUALLY TO RECEIVE WHAT IS NEEDFUL.

As it is written: 'Distribution was made to every one, according as he had need.'<sup>1</sup> By this, we do not say that there should be accepting of persons, which God forbid, but that due consideration should be shown to each one's infirmities. Therefore, let him who needeth less, give God thanks, and be not grieved; and let him who needeth more, be humbled for his infirmity, and not lifted up for the mercy that is shown him; and thus all the members shall be in peace. Above all things, take heed there be no murmuring, by word or sign, upon any occasion whatsoever. If any one shall be found faulty in this respect, let him be subjected to most severe discipline.





## CAPUT XXXV.

### DE SEPTIMANARIIS COQUINÆ.

<sup>13 Mar.</sup> <sup>13 Julii</sup> <sup>12 Nov.</sup> FRATRES sic sibi invicem serviant, ut nullus excusetur a coquinæ officio, nisi aut ægitudine, aut in causa gravis utilitatis quis occupatus fuerit; quia exinde major merces acquiritur. Imbecilibus autem procurentur solatia, ut non cum tristitia hoc faciant, sed habeant omnes solatia, secundum modum Congregationis aut positionem loci. Si major Congregatio fuerit, Cellerarius excusetur a coquina; vel si qui (ut diximus) majoribus utilitatibus occupantur. Cæteri vero sibi sub charitate invicem serviant.

Egressurus de septimana, Sabbato munditias faciat. Linteamina, cum quibus sibi fratres manus aut pedes tergunt, lavet: pedes vero



## CHAPTER XXXV.

### OF THE WEEKLY SERVERS IN THE KITCHEN.

THE Brethren are so to serve each other, that no one be excused from the office of the kitchen, unless he be hindered by sickness or other business of more profit; because a greater reward is gotten thence. But let the weaker Brethren have help, that they may do their work with alacrity, and without sadness; and let all generally have help according as the number of the Community, and the situation of the place, shall require. If the Community be great, let the Cellarer be excused from the kitchen, and as we have said before, such as are employed in matters of greater profit. Let the rest serve each other in charity. On Saturday, let him who endeth his week in the kitchen make all things clean. Let him wash the towels wherewith

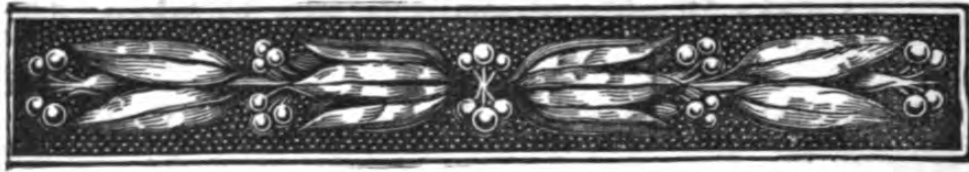
tam ipse, qui egreditur, quam ille qui intraturus est, omnibus lavent. Vasa ministerii sui munda et sana Cellerario reassignet; qui Cellerarius item intranti assignet, ut sciat quid dat, aut quid recipit. Septimanarii autem, ante unam horam refectionis, accipiant super statutam annonam singulos biberes, et panem: ut hora refectionis, sine murmuratione et gravi labore, serviant fratribus suis. In diebus tamen solemnibus usque ad Missas sustineant.

14 Mar. Intrantes et exeuntes hebdomadarii,  
14 Julii  
18 Nov. in Oratorio mox Matutinis finitis, Dominica, omnium genibus provolvantur, postulantes pro se orari. Egrediens autem de septimana dicat hunc versum: "Benedictus es Domine Deus, qui adjuvisti me, et consolatus es me." <sup>1</sup> Quo dicto tertio, accipiat benedictionem egrediens. Subsequatur ingrediens et dicat: "Deus in adjutorium meum intende; Domine ad adjuvandum me festina." <sup>2</sup> Et hoc idem tertio repetatur ab omnibus. Et accepta benedictione, ingrediatur.

<sup>1</sup> Ps. lxxxv. 17.

<sup>2</sup> Ps. lxix. 2.

the Brethren wipe their hands and feet, and let both him who goeth out and him who cometh in, wash the feet of all. He shall hand over to the Cellarer, clean and whole, all the vessels of his office, and the Cellarer shall deliver them to him who entereth upon his office, that he may know what he giveth and what he receiveth. Let these weekly Officers, one hour before refection, take each a draught of drink and a piece of bread over and above the appointed allowance, that at the hour of refection they may serve their Brethren without murmuring or great labour. Nevertheless, on solemn days let all forbear till after Mass. On Sunday, immediately after Lauds both the out-going and the in-coming officers for the week, shall cast themselves upon their knees before all, and ask to be prayed for. Let him that hath ended his office say the verse: "Blessed art Thou, O Lord God, Who didst help me, and console me,"<sup>1</sup> which being thrice repeated, he shall receive the blessing. Let him who entereth upon his office follow immediately after and say: "O God incline unto mine aid, O Lord make haste to help me."<sup>2</sup> Let this likewise be thrice repeated by all, and having received the blessing, let him enter upon his office.



## CAPUT XXXVI.

### DE INFIRMIS FRATRIBUS.

**15 Mar.** INFIRMORUM cura ante omnia et super  
**15 Julii**  
**14 Nov.** omnia adhibenda est, ut sicut revera  
Christo, ita eis serviatur, quia ipse dixit:  
“Infirmus fui, et visitastis me.”<sup>1</sup> Et: “Quod  
fecistis uni de his minimis meis, mihi fecistis.”<sup>2</sup>  
Sed et ipsi infirmi considerent, in honorem  
Dei sibi serviri, et non superfluitate sua  
contristent fratres suos, servientes sibi. Qui  
tamen patienter portandi sunt; quia de talibus  
copiosior merces acquiritur. Ergo cura maxima  
sit Abbati, ne aliquam negligentiam patiantur.  
Quibus fratribus infirmis sit cella super se  
deputata, et servitor timens Deum, et diligens  
ac sollicitus. Balneorum usus infirmis, quoties

<sup>1</sup> Matth. xxv. 36.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 40.



## CHAPTER XXXVI.

### OF THE SICK BRETHREN.

BEFORE all things, and above all things, special care must be taken of the sick, so that they be served in very deed, as Christ Himself, for He saith : "I was sick, and ye visited Me." <sup>1</sup> And : "What ye did to one of these My least Brethren, ye did to Me." <sup>2</sup> But let the sick themselves bear in mind that they are served for the honour of God, and must not grieve the Brethren who serve them by their extravagant demands. Nevertheless, they must patiently be borne with, because there is gotten from such a more abundant reward. Therefore let the Abbot take special care they be not neglected.

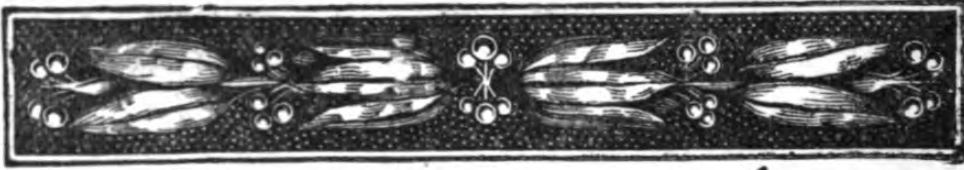
Let a separate cell be set apart for their use,



expedit, offeratur. Sanis autem, et maxime juvenibus, tardius concedatur. Sed et carniū esus infirmis, omninoque debilibus pro reparatione concedatur. At ubi meliorati fuerint, a carnibus more solito omnes abstineant. Curam autem maximam habeat Abbas, ne a Cellerariis aut servitoribus negligantur infirmi: quia ad ipsum respicit, quicquid a discipulis delinquitur.



and an attendant that is God-fearing, diligent, and careful. As often as it shall be expedient, let the use of baths be allowed the sick; but to such as are in health, and especially to the young, let it be seldom granted. Moreover the sick and weakly may be allowed the use of flesh meat for their recovery. As soon, however, as they get better, they must all, after the accustomed manner, abstain from meat. Let the Abbot take special care that the Cellarer or attendants neglect not the sick, because whatever is done amiss by his disciples, is imputed to himself.



## CAPUT XXXVII.

### DE SENIBUS, VEL INFANTIBUS.

16 Mar. LICET ipsa natura humana trahatur ad  
16 Julii  
15 Nov. misericordiam in his ætatibus, senum vi-  
delicet et infantum: tamen et Regulæ auctoritas  
eis prospiciat. Consideretur semper in eis  
imbecillitas, et nullatenus eis districtio Regulæ  
teneatur in alimentis; sed sit in eis pia con-  
sideratio, et præveniant horas canonicas.



## CHAPTER XXXVII.

### OF OLD MEN AND CHILDREN.

ALTHOUGH man's nature is of itself drawn to feel pity for these two ages, that is, for the old and for children, yet it is fitting that the authority of the Rule should provide for them. Let their weakness therefore be always taken into account, and the rigour of the Rule with regard to food, be by no means kept with them. Let a kind consideration be had for them, and let leave be granted them, to eat before the regular hours.



## CAPUT XXXVIII.

### DE HEBDOMADARIO LECTORE.

<sup>17 Mar.</sup> <sup>17 Julii</sup> <sup>16 Nov.</sup> MENSIS fratrum edentium lectio deesse non debet : nec fortuito casu, qui arripuerit codicem, legere audeat ibi, sed lecturus tota hebdomada, Dominica ingrediatur. Qui ingrediens post Missas et Communionem, petat ab omnibus pro se orari, ut avertat ab eo Deus spiritum elationis. Et dicatur hic versus in Oratorio tertio ab omnibus, ipso tamen incipiente : “ Domine labia mea aperies, et os meum annuntiabit laudem tuam;”<sup>1</sup> et sic accepta benedictione, ingrediatur ad legendum ; summumque fiat silentium ad mensam, ut nullius mussitatio, vel vox, nisi solius legentis ibi audiatur.

<sup>1</sup> Ps. l. 17.



## CHAPTER XXXVIII.

### OF THE WEEKLY READER.

READING ought not to cease while the Brethren eat at table. Neither ought anyone presume to read, who shall take up the book at hazard ; but let him who is appointed to read for the whole week, enter upon his office on Sunday. After Mass and Communion, let him ask all to pray for him, that God may keep from him the spirit of pride. And let this verse be thrice repeated in the Oratory by all, the Reader first beginning it: "O Lord Thou wilt open my lips, and my mouth shall declare Thy praise;"<sup>1</sup> and thus having received a blessing, let him enter upon his duty. The greatest silence shall be kept at table, so that no muttering, or voice, shall be heard there, except the voice of the Reader.

Quæ vero necessaria sunt comedentibus et bibentibus, sibi sic invicem ministrent fratres, ut nullus indigeat petere aliquid. Si quid tamen opus fuerit, sonitu cujuscumque signi potius petatur quam voce. Nec præsumat ibi aliquis de ipsa lectione, aut aliunde quicquam requirere, ne detur occasio maligno, nisi forte Prior voluerit pro ædificatione aliquid breviter dicere. Frater autem hebdomadarius accipiat mixtum prius quam incipiat legere, propter Communionem sanctam, et ne forte grave sit ei jejunium sustinere; postea autem cum coquinæ Hebdomadariis et servitoribus reficiat. Fratres autem non per ordinem legant aut cantent, sed qui ædificent audientes.

Such things as are necessary for meat and drink, let the Brethren so minister to each other, that no one need ask for anything. Yet should anything be wanted, let it be asked for rather by a sign than by a word. Nor let any one presume to ask questions there, about what is being read, or about anything else, lest occasion be given to the evil one. Should the Prior, however, think fit, he may make some brief exhortation for the edification of the Brethren. And let the Brother who is Reader for the week take a little pottage before he begin to read, on account of Holy Communion, and lest perchance it be grievous for him to fast so long. Afterwards let him eat with the weekly Officers and servers of the kitchen. The Brethren must not read or sing in turns, but such only as may edify the hearers.





## CAPUT XXXIX.

### DE MENSURA CIBORUM.

18 Mar. SUFFICERE credimus ad refectionem quo-  
18 Julii  
17 Nov. tidianam tam Sextæ, quam Nonæ, omni-  
bus mensis cocta duo pulmentaria, propter  
diversorum infirmitates: ut forte qui ex uno  
non poterit edere, ex alio reficiatur. Ergo duo  
pulmentaria cocta fratribus sufficiant; et si  
fuerint inde poma, aut nascentia leguminum,  
addatur et tertium. Panis libra una propensa  
sufficiat in die, sive una sit refectio, sive prandii  
et cœnæ. Quod si cœnaturi sunt, de eadem  
libra tertia pars a Cellerario servetur, reddenda  
cœnaturis.

Quod si labor forte factus fuerit major, in  
arbitrio et potestate Abbatis erit, si expediat,



## CHAPTER XXXIX.

### OF THE MEASURE OR QUANTITY OF MEAT.

WE think it sufficient for daily refectation, both at the sixth and ninth hour, that there be at all seasons two dishes, because of the infirmities of different people; so that he who cannot eat of one, may make his meal of the other. Let therefore two dishes of hot food suffice for the Brethren, and if there be any apples or young vegetables, let them be added as a third dish. Let one pound weight of bread suffice for the day, whether there be one refectation, or both dinner and supper. If they are to sup, let a third part of that pound be reserved by the Cellarer, to be put before them at supper.

If their labour be great, it shall be in the power of the Abbot to add what he shall think

aliquid augere, remota præ omnibus crapula, ut nunquam surripiat Monacho indigeries: quia nihil sic contrarium est omni Christiano, quomodo crapula, sicut ait Dominus noster: "Videte ne graventur corda vestra in crapula et ebrietate."<sup>1</sup> Pueris vero minori ætate non eadem servetur quantitas, sed minor quam majoribus, servata in omnibus parcitate. Carnium vero quadrupedum ab omnibus abstineatur comestio, præter omnino debiles et ægrotos.

<sup>1</sup> Luc. xxi. 34.

*Of the Measure or Quantity of Meat.* 171

fitting to their ordinary allowance; taking care always to avoid excess and surfeiting, that the Monks be not overtaken with indigestion, because there is no sin more contrary to a Christian than gluttony, as our Lord saith: "Take heed to yourselves lest perhaps your hearts be overcharged with surfeiting and drunkenness."<sup>1</sup> But to children of tender age, let not the same quantity be given, but less than to the older, in all things preserving moderation and frugality. Let all, except the very weak and the sick, abstain from eating the flesh of four footed beasts.



## CAPUT XL.

### DE MENSURA POTUS.

19 Mar. "UNUSQUISQUE proprium habet donum  
19 Julii  
18 Nov. ex Deo : alius sic, alius vero sic." <sup>1</sup> Et  
ideo cum aliqua scrupulositate a nobis mensura  
victus aliorum constituitur. Tamen infirmorum  
contuentes imbecillitatem, credimus heminam  
vini per singulos sufficere per diem. Quibus  
autem donat Deus tolerantiam abstinentiæ,  
propriam se habituros mercedem sciant.

Quod si aut loci necessitas, vel labor, aut  
ardor æstatis, amplius poposcerit, in arbitrio  
Prioris consistat, considerans in omnibus, ne  
subrepat satietas aut ebrietas. Licet legamus,  
vinum omnino Monachorum non esse; sed quia  
nostris temporibus id Monachis persuaderi non

<sup>1</sup> 1 Cor. vii. 7.



## CHAPTER XL.

### OF THE MEASURE OF DRINK.

“EVERYONE hath his proper gift from God, one thus, and another thus.”<sup>1</sup> Therefore, it is not without some misgiving, that we appoint the measure of other men’s victuals. Yet considering the condition of those in weak health, we think that one pint of wine will be sufficient for each one every day. But let those upon whom God bestows the gift of abstinence know, that they shall receive their proper reward. If, however, the situation of the place, extraordinary labour, or the heat of summer, require more, let the Prior do what he thinketh good; ever having a care that fulness, or gluttony creep not in.

And although we read\* “that wine is not

\* In Vitis Patrum. Verba Senior : v. 4. 31.

potest, saltem vel hoc consentiamus, ut non usque ad satietatem bibamus, sed parcius: quia “vinum apostatare facit etiam sapientes.”<sup>1</sup> Ubi autem loci necessitas exposcit, ut nec suprascripta mensura inveniri possit, sed multo minus, aut ex toto nihil, benedicant Deum, qui ibi habitant, et non murmurent. Hoc autem omnino admonentes, ut absque murmurationibus sint.

<sup>1</sup> Eccli. xix. 2.



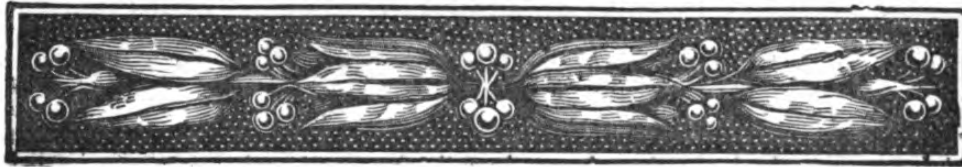
at all the drink of Monks," yet, because in these our times, they will not be so persuaded, let us at least agree to this, not to drink to satiety, but sparingly, "Because wine maketh even the wise to fall away."<sup>1</sup> Where, however, the poverty of the place will not allow the appointed measure, but much less, or perhaps none at all, let those who live there praise God and murmur not. This we admonish above all things, that there never be any murmuring.



## CAPUT XLI.

### QUIBUS HORIS OPORTEAT REFICERE FRATRES.

<sup>20 Mar.</sup> A SANCTO Pascha usque ad Pentecosten  
<sup>20 Julii</sup>  
<sup>19 Nov.</sup> ad Sextam reficiant Fratres, et ad seram  
cœnent. A Pentecoste autem tota æstate (si  
labores agrorum non habent Monachi, aut  
nimietas æstatis non perturbat) quarta et  
sexta Feria jejurent usque ad Nonam : reliquis  
vero diebus ad Sextam prandeant. Quæ  
prandii Sexta, si opera in agris habuerint,  
aut æstatis fervor nimius fuerit, continuanda  
erit, et in Abbatis sit providentia. Et sic  
omnia temperet atque disponat, qualiter et  
animæ salventur, et quod faciunt fratres,  
absque ulla murmuratione faciant. Ab Idibus  
autem Septembris, usque ad caput Quadra-  
gesimæ, ad Nonam semper reficiant Fratres.  
In Quadragesima vero usque ad Pascha, ad



## CHAPTER XLI.

AT WHAT HOURS THE BRETHREN ARE TO TAKE  
THEIR REFECTIONS.

FROM the holy feast of Easter until Whitsuntide, let the Brethren take their refectio[n] at the sixth hour,\* and their supper at night. But from Whitsuntide, throughout the whole summer, let them fast on Wednesdays and Fridays till the ninth hour,† unless they have to labour in the fields, or the extremity of the heat oppress them; but on other days let them dine at the sixth hour. This hour for dinner shall be continued at the discretion of the Abbot, if they have work in the fields, or the heat of summer be great. Let him so

\* Mid-day.

† This would be about two o'clock, for None in summer has advanced a good hour.

178 *Quibus horis oporteat reficere Fratres.*

Vesperam reficiant. Ipsa tamen Vespera sic agatur, ut lumine lucernæ non indigeant reficientes, sed luce adhuc diei omnia consummentur. Sed et omni tempore, sive cœnæ, sive refectionis hora sic temperetur, ut cum luce fiant omnia.

moderate and dispose all things that souls may be saved, and that what the Brethren do, may be done without murmuring. But from the thirteenth of September till the beginning of Lent, let the Brethren always take their meal at the ninth hour.\*

From the beginning of Lent till Easter, they shall take their meal in the evening;† yet, let things be so ordered, that there be no need of lamps during the refectio, but that all be done by daylight. At all times let the hour for supper and for dinner be so arranged that all things be done by daylight.

\* Sundays and Festivals excepted, for on these days they dined at the sixth hour.

† About five o'clock.



## CAPUT XLII.

UT POST COMPLETORIUM NEMO LOQUATUR.,

**21 Mar.** OMNI tempore silentio debent studere  
**21 Julii**  
**20 Nov.** Monachi, maxime tamen nocturnis horis.  
Et ideo omni tempore, sive jejuniï, sive prandii, si tempus fuerit prandii, mox ut surrexerint a cœna, sedeant omnes in unum, et legat unus Collationes, vel Vitas Patrum, aut certe aliquid quod ædificet audientes; non autem Heptateucum, aut Regum: quia infirmis intellectibus non erit utile illa hora hanc Scripturam audire; aliis vero horis legantur. Si autem jejunii dies fuerit, dicta Vespera, parvo intervallo, mox accedant ad Lectionem, ut diximus, et lectis quatuor aut quinque foliis, vel quantum hora permittit, omnibus in unum concurrentibus, per hanc moram Lectionis: si quis forte



## CHAPTER XLII.

### THAT NO ONE MAY SPEAK AFTER COMPLIN.

MONKS ought to keep silence at all times, but especially during the hours of the night; and therefore on all days, whether of fast or not, let them all come together, presently after supper if it be not a fasting-day, and let one read the "Collations," \* or Lives of the Fathers, or something else which will edify the hearers; not, however, the Heptateuch, or Book of Kings, for it will not be profitable for weak understandings to hear this part of Scripture at that hour; yet at other times it may be read. But if it be a fasting-day, let them, as we have said, come to the reading of the

\* The Conferences of the Solitaries, collected together by Cassian.



182 *Ut post Completorium nemo loquatur.*

in assignato sibi commisso fuerit occupatus, occurrat.

Omnes ergo in unum positi, compleant: et exeuntes a Completorio nulla sit licentia denuo cuiquam loqui aliquid. Quod si inventus fuerit quisquam prævaricari hanc taciturnitatis regulam, graviori vindictæ subjaceat; excepto si necessitas hospitem supervenerit, aut forte Abbas alicui aliquid jusserit. Quod tamen et ipsum cum summa gravitate et moderatione honestissime fiat.

*That no one may speak after Complin.* 183

Collations shortly after Even-song. Then let them read four or five pages, or as many as the time will allow, in order that during reading, all, even such as have had some work enjoined them, may have assembled together. All being gathered together, let them say Complin, after which no one shall be permitted to speak. If any one shall be found to break this rule of silence, let him be liable to the most severe punishment; except there be some necessary cause, such as the arrival of guests, or the command of the Abbot. Yet, even in that case, let it be done with the greatest gravity and moderation.



## CAPUT XLIII.

DE IIS, QUI AD OPUS DEI, VEL AD MENSAM  
TARDE OCCURRUNT.

<sup>22 Mar.</sup> <sup>22 Julii</sup> <sup>21 Nov.</sup> AD horam Divini Officii, mox ut auditum fuerit signum, relictis omnibus, quælibet fuerint in manibus, summa cum festinatione curratur; cum gravitate tamen, ut non scurrilitas inveniat fomitem. Ergo nihil Operi Dei præponatur. Quod si quis ad Nocturnas Vigilias post Gloriam Psalmi nonagesimi quarti (quem propter hoc omnino protrahendo et morose volumus dici) occurrerit, non stet in ordine suo in Choro, sed ultimus omnium stet, aut in loco quem talibus negligentibus seorsum constituerit Abbas, ut videatur ab ipso, vel ab omnibus, usque dum completo Opere Dei, publica satisfactione pœniteat.

Ideo autem eos in ultimo aut seorsum judi-



## CHAPTER XLIII.

### OF THOSE WHO COME LATE TO THE WORK OF GOD OR TO TABLE.

AS soon as the signal for Divine Office shall be heard, each one, laying aside whatever occupation he may happen to be engaged in, shall hasten to the Oratory with all speed, and yet with gravity, lest an occasion be given for light behaviour. Let nothing, therefore, be preferred to the Work of God. If any one shall come to Matins after the "Gloria" of the ninety-fourth Psalm, which we would have said slowly and leisurely for this very purpose, let him not stand in his order in the choir, but last of all, or in a place which the Abbot shall have set apart for such negligent people; that he may be seen by him and by all the rest, till the Work of God be

cavimus debere stare, ut visi ab omnibus, vel pro ipsa verecundia sua emendentur. Nam si foras Oratorium remaneant, erit forte talis qui se aut recollocet et dormiat, aut certe sedeat foris, vel fabulis vacet, et detur occasio maligno; sed ingrediatur intro, ut nec totum perdat, et de reliquo emendetur. Diurnis autem Horis, qui ad Opus Dei post Versum et Gloriam primi Psalmi qui post Versum dicitur, occurrerit, lege qua supradiximus, in ultimo stet loco: nec præsumat sociari Choro psallentium usque ad satisfactionem, nisi forte Abbas licentiam dederit permissione sua; ita tamen, ut satisfaciat reus ex hoc.

23 Mar. Ad mensam autem qui ante versum  
23 Julii  
22 Nov. non occurrerit, ut simul omnes dicant versum et orent, et sub uno simul omnes accedant ad mensam; qui per negligentiam suam aut vitium non occurrerit, usque ad secundam vicem pro hoc corripatur: si denuo non emendaverit, non permittatur ad mensæ communis participationem, sed sequestratus a consortio omnium reficiat solus, sublata ei portione sua vini, usque ad satisfactionem et emendationem. Similiter autem patiatur, qui ad illum Versum non fuerit præsens, qui post cibum dicitur. Nec quisquam præsumat ante

ended, and thus do penance and make public satisfaction.

We have judged it fitting they should stand in the last place, or apart, for this reason; that being seen by all, they may for very shame's sake amend. For if they remain outside the Oratory, some one will perchance either return to his cell and sleep, or at least sit without, and, abandoning himself to idle talk, give an occasion to the evil one. Let him therefore enter in, that he may not lose all, and may be amended for the time to come. In the day Hours, let him that shall come to the Work of God, after the verse\* and "Gloria" of the first Psalm, stand last, as directed above, and not presume to join himself to the choir of singers until he has made satisfaction, unless the Abbot shall, by his permission, give him leave; on condition, however, that he afterwards make amends for his fault.

He that cometh not to table before the verse,† so that all may say the verse and pray, and all at once sit down to table together, shall be corrected once or twice, if this have happened through his own fault or

\* Deus in adjutorium.

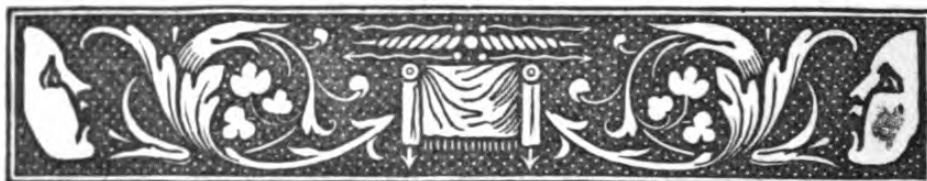
† Oculi omnium, or, Edent pauperes.

statutam horam, vel postea quicquam cibi vel potus percipere. Sed et si cui offertur aliquid a Priore, et accipere renuerit, hora qua desideraverit, hoc quod prius recusavit, aut aliud omnino non percipiat, usque ad emendationem congruam.



negligence. And if he do not afterwards amend, let him not be admitted to a share of the common table, but being separated from the company of his Brethren, let him eat alone, and let his portion of wine be taken away from him, till he make satisfaction and mend his ways. He shall suffer the like penalty, who is not present at the verse\* that is said after meat. And let not any one presume to take meat or drink before or after the appointed time. Moreover, if anything be offered to a Brother by the Prior and that Brother refuse it, but afterwards have a mind for it; he shall receive neither that, nor anything else, until he have made suitable atonement.

\* Confiteantur, or, Memoriam.



## CAPUT XLIV.

### DE IIS QUI EXCOMMUNICANTUR, QUOMODO SATISFACIANT.

**24 Mar.** **24 Julii** **23 Nov.** QUI pro graviore culpa ab Oratorio et a mensa excommunicatur, hora, qua Opus Dei in Oratorio celebratur, ante fores Oratorii prostratus jaceat, nihil dicens; nisi tantum posito in terram capite et prostratus, pronus omnium de Oratorio exeuntium pedibus se projiciat. Et hoc tamdiu faciat usque dum Abbas judicaverit satisfactum esse. Qui dum jussus ab Abbate venerit, provolvat se ipsius Abbatis pedibus, deinde omnium vestigiis fratrum, ut orent pro eo.

Et tunc, si jusserit Abbas, recipiatur in Choro, vel in ordine, quo Abbas decreverit: ita sane, ut Psalmum aut Lectionem vel aliud quid non præsumat in Oratorio imponere, nisi



## CHAPTER XLIV.

HOW THOSE WHO ARE EXCOMMUNICATED, ARE  
TO MAKE SATISFACTION.

AT the hour when the Work of God is being celebrated in the Oratory, let him, who for more grievous offences is excommunicated from the table or Oratory, lie prostrate before the doors thereof saying nothing; only with his head upon the ground, let him lie at the feet of all who go out of the Oratory. This he shall do until the Abbot think he hath given sufficient satisfaction. When ordered by the Abbot, he shall cast himself at the Abbot's feet, and then at the feet of all the Brethren that they may pray for him.

Then, if the Abbot shall order it, let him be received into the Choir, and stand in that rank which he shall appoint; yet so that he

iterum Abbas jubeat. Et omnibus Horis, dum completur Opus Dei, projiciat se in terram, in loco in quo stat, et sic satisfaciat, usque dum ei jubeat Abbas, ut quiescat ab hac satisfactione. Qui vero pro levibus culpis excommunicatur tantum a mensa, in Oratorio satisfaciat usque ad jussionem Abbatis; et tamdiu hoc faciat, usque dum benedicat, et dicat: Sufficit.

*Excommunicated to make satisfaction.* 193

presume not to intone a psalm, or read a lesson in the Oratory, unless the Abbot again order him. After each Hour, when the Work of God is finished, let him cast himself upon the earth in the place where he stands, and in this manner make satisfaction, until the Abbot command him to cease therefrom. But let such as for slight faults are excommunicated only from the table, make satisfaction in the Oratory as long as the Abbot shall command, and let them continue their satisfaction until he bless them and say:—"It is enough."



## CAPUT XLV.

### DE IIS QUI FALLUNTUR IN ORATORIO.

25 Mar. **SI** quis, dum pronuntiat Psalmum, Re-  
25 Julii  
24 Nov. sponorium, aut Antiphonam, vel Lectio-  
nem, fallitur: nisi cum satisfactione ibi coram  
omnibus humiliatus fuerit, majori vindictæ  
subjaceat; quippe qui noluit humilitate cor-  
rigere, quod negligentia deliquit. Infantes  
vero pro tali culpa vapulent.



## CHAPTER XLV.

### OF THOSE WHO COMMIT ANY FAULT IN THE ORATORY.

IF any one, while reciting a psalm, responsory, antiphon, or lesson, shall make any mistake and do not forthwith atone for it before all, let him be liable to greater punishment, as one who will not correct by humility, what he hath done amiss through negligence. But for such a fault, let children be beaten.





## CAPUT XLVI.

### DE IIS QUI IN ALIIS QUIBUSLIBET REBUS DELINQUUNT.

26 Mar. Si quis dum in labore quovis, in coquina,  
26 Julii  
25 Nov. in cellario, in ministerio, in pistrino, in  
horto, in arte aliqua dum laborat, vel in quo-  
cumque loco aliquid deliquerit, aut fregerit  
quippiam, aut perdiderit, vel aliud quid ex-  
cesserit, et non veniens continuo ante Abbatem  
vel Congregationem, ipse ultro satisfecerit et  
prodiderit delictum suum; dum per alium  
cognitum fuerit, majori subjaceat emendationi.  
Si animæ vero peccati causa latens fuerit,  
tantum Abbati, aut spiritualibus Senioribus  
patefaciat, qui sciant curare sua, et aliena vul-  
nera non detegere aut publicare.



## CHAPTER XLVI.

OF THOSE WHO OFFEND IN LIGHTER MATTERS.

IF any one, while engaged in labour, either in the kitchen or the cellar, or in the service of others, in the bakehouse, the garden, or in any other occupation, shall do anything amiss, or break or lose anything, or offend in any other way, and do not come presently before the Abbot or Community, and of his own accord confess and make satisfaction for his offence; when that is made known by another, he shall be more severely punished. But if the fault be a secret sin, let him manifest it to the Abbot only, or to his spiritual Seniors, who know how to heal their own wounds, and not to disclose or publish those of others.



## CAPUT XLVII.

### DE SIGNIFICANDA HORA OPERIS DEI.

27 Mar. NUNTIANDA hora Operis Dei, die noctu-  
27 Julii  
26 Nov. que sit cura Abbatis, aut ipse nuntiare,  
aut tali sollicito fratri injungat hanc curam,  
ut omnia horis competentibus compleantur.  
Psalmos autem, vel Antiphonas post Abbatem,  
ordine suo, quibus jussum fuerit, imponant.  
Cantare autem aut legere non præsumat, nisi  
qui potest ipsum officium implere, ut ædificentur  
audientes. Quod cum humilitate, et gravitate,  
et tremore faciat, et cui jusserit Abbas.



## CHAPTER XLVII.

### OF MAKING KNOWN THE HOUR FOR THE WORK OF GOD.

LET the Abbot take care, both night and day, to signify the hour for the Work of God, either by announcing it himself, or by intrusting the duty of so doing to some watchful Brother, in order that all things may be done at their appointed times. But after the Abbot, let such as have been appointed, each in his own order, intone the psalms or antiphons. Let not any one presume to sing or read unless he have skill enough to do so, unto the edification of the hearers. Whomsoever the Abbot shall appoint to do this, let him do it with humility, gravity, and the fear of God.



## CAPUT XLVIII.

### DE OPERE MANUUM QUOTIDIANO.

28 Mar. OTIOSITAS inimica est animæ. Et ideo  
28 Julii  
27 Nov. certis temporibus occupari debent Fra-  
tres in labore manuum : certis iterum horis in  
lectione divina. Ideoque hac dispositione  
credimus utraque tempora ordinari ; id est,  
ut a Pascha usque ad Kalendas Octobris mane  
exeuntes, a prima usque ad horam pene quartam  
laborent, quod necessarium fuerit. Ab hora  
autem quarta usque ad horam quasi sextam  
lectioni vacent.

Post Sextam autem surgentes a mensa,  
pausent in lectis suis cum omni silentio : aut  
forte qui voluerit sibi legere, sic legat, ut  
alium non inquietet. Agatur Nona temperius,  
mediante octava hora : et iterum, quod facien-



## CHAPTER XLVIII.

### OF DAILY MANUAL LABOUR.

IDLENESS is an enemy of the soul. Therefore the Brethren ought to be employed at certain times in labouring with their hands, and at other fixed times, in holy reading. Wherefore we think that both these occasions may be well ordered thus: From Easter till the first of October, let them, on going forth from Prime, labour at whatever they are required till about the fourth hour. From the fourth, till close upon the sixth hour, let them be employed in reading. On rising from table after the sixth hour, let them rest on their beds with all silence, or if perchance any one shall desire to read, let him read in such a way as not to disturb any one else.

Let None be said seasonably, at about the



dum est, operentur usque ad vesperam. Si autem necessitas loci, aut paupertas exegerit, ut ad fruges colligendas per se occupentur, non contristentur; quia tunc vere Monachi sunt, si de labore manuum suarum vivunt, sicut et Patres nostri et Apostoli. Omnia tamen mensurate fiant propter pusillanimes.

29 Mar. A Kalendis autem Octobris usque ad  
29 Julii  
28 Nov. caput Quadragesimæ, usque ad horam secundam plenam lectioni vacent: hora secunda agatur Tertia; et usque ad Nonam omnes in opus suum laborent, quod eis injungitur. Facto autem primo signo novæ horæ, disjungant se ab opere suo singuli, et sint parati, dum secundum signum pulsaverit. Post refectionem autem vacent lectionibus suis, aut Psalmis. In Quadragesimæ vero diebus, a mane usque ad tertiam plenam, lectioni vacent, et usque ad decimam plenam operentur quod eis injungitur. In quibus diebus Quadragesimæ, accipiant omnes singulos codices de Bibliotheca, quos per ordinem ex integro legant: qui codices in capite Quadragesimæ dandi sunt. Ante omnia sane deputentur unus aut duo seniores, qui circumeant monasterium horis, quibus vacant Fratres lectioni, et videant, ne forte inveniatur



middle of the eighth hour, and after that let them work at what they have to do till the evening. If the situation of the place, or their poverty require them to labour in reaping their corn, let them not be saddened thereat, for then are they Monks in very deed, when they live by the labour of their hands, as our Fathers and the Apostles did before us. Yet let all things be done with moderation for the sake of the fainthearted.

From the first of October till the beginning of Lent, they shall be employed in reading till the second hour complete, when Tierce shall be celebrated, and from that till the ninth hour, let them labour at whatever work is enjoined them. At the first signal of the ninth hour, let them all leave off work, so as to be ready when the second signal is given. After their refecton they shall be employed in reading spiritual books, or the psalms. But in Lent they must read from morning till the third hour complete, then let them work till the end of the tenth hour, at what is enjoined them. In these days of Lent, each one shall take a book from the Library, and read it all through in order. The books must be given at the beginning of Lent. Let one or two

frater acediosus, qui vacet otio, aut fabulis, et non sit intentus lectioni: et non solum sibi inutilis sit, sed etiam alios extollat. Hic talis, si (quod absit) repertus fuerit, corripiatur semel et secundo: si non emendaverit, correctioni regulari subjaceat, taliter, ut cæteri metum habeant. Neque frater ad fratrem jungatur horis incompetentibus.

30 Mar. Dominico die lectioni vacent; exceptis  
30 Julii  
29 Nov. iis qui variis officiis deputati sunt. Si quis vero ita negligens et desidiosus fuerit, ut non velit, aut non possit meditari, aut legere, injungatur ei opus quod faciat, ut non vacet. Fratribus infirmis vel delicatis talis opera aut ars injungatur, ut nec otiosi sint, nec violentia laboris opprimantur, ut effugentur. Quorum imbecillitas ab Abbate consideranda est.

Seniors be specially appointed to go about the Monastery at the hours in which the Brethren are employed in reading, and see that no one be slothful or give himself up to idleness or foolish talk, and neglect his reading, being thus not only unprofitable to himself, but also a hindrance to others. If such an one be found (which God forbid!) let him be reprehended once or twice, and if he do not amend, let him be so severely corrected, that others may take warning by it. Neither let one Brother associate himself with another at unseasonable times.

On Sunday all shall devote themselves to reading, except such as are deputed for the various offices. But if any one shall be so negligent and slothful as to be either unwilling or unable to read or meditate, let him have some work\* imposed upon him which he can do, and thus not be idle. To the Brethren who are of weak constitution or in delicate health, such work or art shall be given as shall keep them from idleness, and yet not oppress them with so much labour as to drive them away. Their weakness must be taken into consideration by the Abbot.

\* Not any servile work, for such is forbidden; but some work in the kitchen, or in the infirmary.



## CAPUT XLIX.

### DE QUADRAGESIMÆ OBSERVATIONE.

**31 Mar.** LICET omni tempore vita Monachi Qua-  
**31 Julii**  
**30 Nov.** dragesimæ debeat observationem habere ;  
tamen quia paucorum est ista virtus, ideo  
suademus istis diebus Quadragesimæ omni  
purityte vitam suam custodire, omnes pariter  
negligentias aliorum temporum his diebus  
sanctis diluere. Quod tunc digne fit; si ab  
omnibus vitiis nos temperemus : orationi cum  
fletibus, lectioni, et compunctioni cordis, atque  
abstinentiæ operam demus. Ergo his diebus  
augeamus nobis aliquid ad solitum pensum  
servitutis nostræ, orationes peculiare, ciborum  
et potus abstinentiam ; unusquisque super  
mensuram sibi indictam aliquid propria volun-  
tate cum gaudio Sancti Spiritus offerat Deo :



## CHAPTER XLIX.

### OF THE OBSERVANCE OF LENT.

ALTHOUGH a Monk's life ought at all times to resemble a continual Lent, yet because few have such virtue, we exhort all in these days of Lent to live in all purity, and during this holy season to wash away all the negligences of other times. This we shall worthily accomplish if we refrain from all defects, and apply ourselves to tearful prayer, to reading, to compunction of heart, and abstinence. In these days, therefore, let us add something over and above to our wonted task, such as private prayers, and abstinence from meat and drink ; let every one offer to God, of his own free will, with joy of the Holy Ghost, something above the measure appointed him ; that

id est, subtrahat corpori suo de cibo, de potu, de somno, de loquacitate, de scurrilitate, et cum spiritualis desiderii gaudio sanctum Pascha expectet. Hoc ipsum tamen, quod unusquisque offert, Abbati suo suggerat, et cum ejus fiat oratione et voluntate: quia quod sine permissione Patris spiritualis fit, præsumptioni deputabitur et vanæ gloriæ, non mercedi. Ergo cum voluntate Abbatis omnia agenda sunt.

is to say, let him withhold from his body something in the way of food, drink, sleep, talk, laughter, and with spiritual joy and desire, await the holy feast of Easter. Nevertheless, let each one acquaint the Abbot with what he offers, and do it at his desire and with his consent; because whatever is done without the permission of the spiritual Father, shall be imputed to vain glory, and merit no reward. All things, therefore, must be done with the approbation of the Abbot.





## CAPUT L.

DE FRATRIBUS QUI LONGE AB ORATORIO LABOR-  
ANT, AUT IN VIA SUNT.

<sup>1 Apr.</sup> FRATRES qui omnino longe sunt in labore,  
<sup>1 Aug.</sup>  
<sup>1 Dec.</sup> et non possunt occurrere hora competenti  
ad Oratorium, et Abbas hoc perpendit, quia ita  
est, agant ibidem Opus Dei, ubi operantur, cum  
tremore divino flectentes genua. Similiter qui  
in itinere directi sunt, non eos prætereant  
Horæ constitutæ: sed ut possunt, agant ibi, et  
servitutis pensum non negligant reddere.



## CHAPTER L.

OF THE BRETHREN WHO WORK AT A DISTANCE  
FROM THE ORATORY, OR ARE ON A JOURNEY.

THE Brethren who work at a great distance, and, in the Abbot's judgment, are unable to come to the Oratory in due time, shall fall upon their knees in the place where they are labouring, and there perform the Work of God with fear and reverence. Also, those who are sent on a journey shall not allow the appointed hours to pass by, but perform them on the way as they are best able, and omit not to accomplish their task of Divine Service.



## CAPUT LI.

DE FRATRIBUS QUI NON SATIS LONGE PROFISCUNTUR.

**2 Apr.** FRATRES qui pro quovis responso profiscuntur, et ea die sperant reverti ad **2 Aug.** Monasterium, non præsument foris manducare, **2 Dec.** etiamsi a quovis rogentur: nisi forte eis ab Abbate suo præcipiatur. Quod si aliter fecerint, excommunicentur.



## CHAPTER LI.

OF THE BRETHREN WHO DO NOT GO FAR OFF.

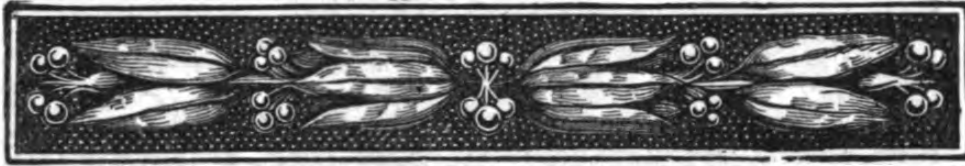
LET not the Brethren who go forth upon any errand, and intend to return that same day to the Monastery, presume to eat while abroad, even though invited to do so, unless perchance they have the Abbot's orders. If they do otherwise, let them be excommunicated.



## CAPUT LII.

### DE ORATORIO MONASTERII.

<sup>3 Apr.</sup> ORATORIUM hoc sit, quod dicitur: nec  
<sup>3 Aug.</sup>  
<sup>3 Dec.</sup> ibi quicquam aliud geratur, aut condatur.  
Expleto Opere Dei omnes cum summo silentio  
exeant, et agatur reverentia Deo; ut frater,  
qui forte sibi peculiariter vult orare, non im-  
pediatur alterius improbitate. Sed si alter  
vult sibi forte secretius orare, simpliciter intret  
et oret; non in clamosa voce, sed in lacrymis,  
et intentione cordis. Ergo qui simile opus  
non facit, non permittatur, expleto Opere Dei,  
remorari in Oratorio, sicut dictum est, ne alius  
impedimentum patiatur.



## CHAPTER LII.

### OF THE ORATORY OF THE MONASTERY.

LET the Oratory be what its name signifieth, and let nothing else be done or treated of there. When the Work of God is ended, let all go forth with exceeding great silence, and let respect be paid to the presence of God, in order that the Brother who wishes to pray privately, may not be hindered from so doing by the misconduct of another. If any other Brother should also wish to pray secretly, let him enter without ostentation and pray, not with a loud voice, but with tears and earnestness of heart. Therefore, let not any one remain in the Oratory after the Work of God is ended, except for the purpose of prayer, lest he be a hindrance to others.



## CAPUT LIII.

### DE HOSPITIBUS SUSCIPIENDIS.

4 Apr. OMNES supervenientes hospites tamquam  
4 Aug.  
4 Dec. Christus suscipiantur, quia ipse dicturus  
est: "Hospes fui, et suscepistis me."<sup>1</sup> Et  
omnibus congruus honor exhibeatur, maxime  
tamen domesticis fidei, et peregrinis. Ut ergo  
nuntiatus fuerit hospes, occurratur ei a Priore  
vel a Fratibus, cum omni officio charitatis: et  
primitus orent pariter, et sic sibi socientur in  
pace. Quod pacis osculum non prius offeratur,  
nisi oratione præmissa, propter illusiones dia-  
bolicas. In ipsa autem salutatione omnis  
exhibeatur humilitas. Omnibus venientibus  
sive discedentibus hospitibus, inclinato capite,  
vel prostrato omni corpore in terra, Christus  
in eis adoretur, qui et suscipitur.

<sup>1</sup> Matth. xxv. 35.





## CHAPTER LIII.

### OF THE MANNER OF ENTERTAINING GUESTS.

LET all guests who come to the Monastery be entertained like Christ Himself, because He will say: "I was a stranger, and ye took Me in."<sup>1</sup> Let due honour be paid to all, especially to those who are of the household of the Faith, and to travellers. As soon, therefore, as a guest is announced, let the Prior or the Brethren go to meet him, with all show of charity. First let them pray together, and so be associated to each other in peace. The kiss of peace shall not be offered till after prayer, because of the illusions of the devil. And in the salutation itself let all humility be shown. By bowing the head or prostrating on the ground before all the guests who come or go,

Suscepti autem hospites ducantur ad orationem, et postea sedeat cum eis Prior, aut cui jusserit ipse. Legatur coram hospite lex divina, ut ædificetur, et post hæc omnis ei exhibeatur humanitas. Jejunium a Priore frangatur propter hospitem; nisi forte præcipuus sit ille dies jejunii, qui non possit violari. Fratres autem consuetudines jejuniorum prosequantur. Aquam in manibus Abbas hospitibus det; pedes hospitibus omnibus tam Abbas, quam cuncta congregatio lavet; quibus lotis, hunc versum dicant: "Suscepimus, Deus, misericordiam tuam, in medio templi tui."<sup>1</sup> Pauperum autem, et peregrinorum maxime, susceptio omni cura sollicite exhibeatur: quia in ipsis magis Christus suscipitur. Nam divitum terror ipse sibi exigit honorem.

<sup>5</sup> Apr. Coquina Abbatis et hospitem per se  
<sup>5</sup> Aug.  
<sup>5</sup> Dec. sit, ut incertis horis supervenientes hospites, qui nunquam desunt Monasterio, non inquietent Fratres. In quam coquinam ingrediantur duo fratres ad annum, qui ipsum officium bene impleant. Quibus, ut indigent, solatia administrentur, ut absque murmuratione serviant: et iterum quando occupationem mi-

<sup>1</sup> Ps. xlvii. 10.

let Christ Who is received in their persons, be also adored in them.

When the guests have been received, let them be brought to prayer, and after that, the Prior, or any one whom he shall order, shall sit with them. Let the Divine Law be read before the guest, that he may be edified, and afterwards let all courtesy be shown him. For his sake, the Prior shall break the fast ordained by the Rule, unless perchance it be one of those special days, on which it cannot be broken.\* The Brethren, however, shall keep their accustomed fast. Let the Abbot pour water on the hands of the guests, and let both him and the whole Community wash the feet of the same, after which they shall say this verse: "We have received Thy mercy, O God, in the midst of Thy temple."<sup>1</sup> But let the poor, and strangers especially, be diligently entertained with all care, because in them Christ is more truly received. For the simple fear of the rich doth beget them honour.

Let the kitchen for the Abbot and the guests stand apart, in order that the latter, who are never wanting in a monastery, may not dis-

\* That is, a fast day appointed by the Church.

norem habent, exeant, ubi eis imperatur, in opera. Et non solum in ipsis, sed et in omnibus officiis Monasterii ista sit consideratio; ut quando indigent, solatia accommodentur eis: et iterum quando vacant, obediant imperanti.

Item et cellam hospitem habeat assignatam frater, cujus animam timor Dei possideat; qui sint lecti strati sufficienter, et domus Dei a sapientibus sapienter administratur. Hospitibus autem, cui non præcipitur, nullatenus societur neque colloquatur: sed si obviaverit aut viderit, salutatis humiliter, ut dictum est, et petita benedictione, pertranseat dicens sibi non licere colloqui cum hospite.

quiet the Brethren by their untimely arrivals. Into this kitchen let two Brothers, who can perform its duties well, enter for a year. They shall have assistance when they need it, in order that they may serve without murmuring. When they have less labour, let them go forth to work where they shall be appointed. And not only in these, but in all other offices of the Monastery, let a loving consideration be shown them, so that when they need help, it be given, and when they are without work, they obey and do what is commanded them.

Let the care of the guest-room be entrusted to a Brother, whose soul the fear of God possesseth. Let there be a sufficient number of beds there, and let the House of God be by wise men discreetly governed. By no means let any one, unless appointed thereunto, either mix with, or speak to the guests; but if he shall meet or see them, after humbly saluting and asking their blessing, he shall pass on, saying that it is not lawful for him to talk with a guest.



## CAPUT LIV.

### SI DEBET MONACHUS LITTERAS, VEL EULOGIAS SUSCIPERE.

6 Apr. NULLATENUS liceat Monacho nec a paren-  
6 Aug. tibus suis, nec a quoquam hominum, nec  
6 Dec. sibi invicem litteras, aut eulogias, vel quælibet  
munuscula accipere aut dare, sine præcepto  
Abbatis sui. Quod si etiam a parentibus suis  
ei quicquam directum fuerit, non præsumat  
suscipere illud, nisi prius indicatum fuerit  
Abbati. Quod si jusserit suscipi, in Abbatis  
sit potestate, cui illud jubeat dari: et non  
contristetur frater, cui forte directum fuerat,  
ut non detur occasio diabolo. Qui autem aliter  
præsumpserit, disciplinæ regulari subiaceat.





## CHAPTER LIV.

WHETHER IT BE LAWFUL FOR A MONK TO RE  
CEIVE LETTERS OR PRESENTS.

BY no means let any Monk, without the Abbot's permission, receive from his parents or from anyone else, or give to another, letters, tokens, or any gifts whatsoever. And if anything be sent to him, even from his parents, let him not presume to receive it, unless it be first told the Abbot. If he order it to be received, it shall be in his power to appoint the person to whom it shall be given; and let not the Brother, to whom perchance it was sent, be grieved, lest an occasion be given to the devil. Whosoever shall presume to do otherwise, shall be subjected to regular discipline.





## CAPUT LV.

### DE VESTIMENTIS, ET CALCEAMENTIS FRATRUM.

7 Apr. VESTIMENTA fratribus secundum locorum  
7 Aug.  
7 Dec. qualitatem ubi habitant, vel aerum temperiem dentur, quia in frigidis regionibus amplius indigetur, in calidis vero minus. Hæc ergo consideratio penes Abbatem sit. Nos tamen mediocribus locis sufficere credimus Monachis per singulos cucullam et tunicam: cucullam in hyeme villosam; in æstate puram et vetustam, et scapulare propter opera: indumenta pedum, pedules et caligas. De quarum rerum omnium colore aut grossitudine non causentur Monachi, sed quales inveniri possunt in provincia, qua degunt, aut quod vilius comparari potest.

Abbas autem de mensura provideat, ut non



## CHAPTER LV.

### OF THE CLOTHES AND SHOES OF THE BRETHREN.

LET clothing be given to the Brethren suitable to the place where they live, and to the temperature of the air; because in cold countries more is needed, and in warm, less. The arrangement of all this shall be left to the discretion of the Abbot. Nevertheless we believe that for temperate places, it will be sufficient for each Monk to have a cowl and tunic; the cowl in winter to be of thicker stuff, but in summer finer and worn thin; also a scapular for work, and shoes and stockings to cover their feet. Let not the Monks find fault with the colour or coarseness of these things; they shall be such as can be procured in the country where they live, or bought at the cheapest rate.

sint curta ipsa vestimenta utentibus eis, sed mensurata. Accipientes nova, vetera semper reddant in præsentî, reponenda in vestiario propter pauperes. Sufficit enim Monacho duas tunicas et duas cucullas habere propter noctes, et propter lavare ipsas res. Jam quod supra fuerit, superfluum est, et amputari debet. Et pedules, et quodcumque est vetustum, reddant, dum accipiunt novum. Femoralia hi qui diriguntur in via, de vestiario accipiant: qui revertentes lota ibi restituant. Et cucullæ et tunicæ sint aliquanto his, quas habere soliti sunt, modice meliores; quas exeuntes in viam accipiant de vestiario, et revertentes restituant.

8<sup>o</sup> Apr. Stramenta autem lectorum sufficiant,  
 8<sup>o</sup> Aug.  
 8<sup>o</sup> Dec. : matta, sagum, lena et capitale. Quæ tamen lecta frequenter ab Abbate scrutanda sunt, propter opus peculiare, ne inveniatur. Et si cui inventum fuerit, quod ab Abbate non acceperit, gravissimæ disciplinæ subjaceat. Et ut hoc vitium peculiare radicitus amputetur, dentur ab Abbate omnia quæ sunt necessaria: id est, cuculla, tunica, pedules, caligæ, brace, cultellus, graphium, acus, mappula, tabulæ, ut omnis auferatur necessitatis excusatio. A quo tamen Abbate semper consideretur illa sententia Actuum Apostolorum: quia “dabatur singulis,

Let the Abbot take care of their dimensions, that they be not too short, but of a size suitable to those who wear them. On receiving new clothes, let them always give up the old ones at once, to be laid by in the wardrobe for the poor. For it is sufficient for a Monk to have two tunics and two cowls, as well for change at nights, as for the convenience of washing. Anything beyond this is superfluous and must be cut off. Also, they shall give back their shoes, and whatever is worn out, when they receive anything new. When sent on a journey, they shall receive drawers from the wardrobe, and on their return shall restore them washed clean. Let their cowls and tunics on such occasions be somewhat better than those they ordinarily use. They shall receive them on setting out, and restore them to the wardrobe on their return.

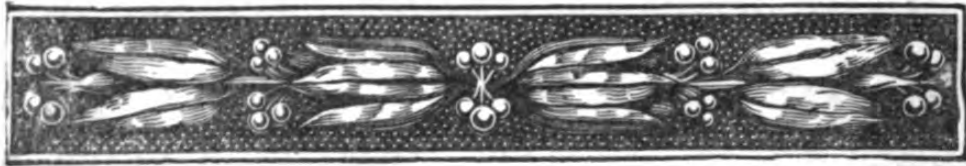
Let a straw mattress, a blanket, coverlet and pillow, suffice for their bedding. This the Abbot shall frequently examine, to prevent the vice of propriety or ownership; and if anyone be discovered to possess anything which he hath not received from the Abbot, let him be subjected to the severest correction. To root out this vice, let all things be given them by

228 *De Vestimentis, et calceamentis Fratrum.*

prout cuique opus erat.”<sup>1</sup> Ita ergo et Abbas consideret infirmitatem indigentium, et non malam voluntatem invidentium. In omnibus tamen judiciis suis Dei retributionem cogitet.

<sup>1</sup> Act. iv. 35.

the Abbot which shall be necessary, that is, a cowl, a tunic, shoes and stockings, a girdle, a knife, a pen, a needle, a handkerchief, and tablets, that all pretence of necessity may be taken away. However, let the Abbot always bear in mind that sentence from the Acts of the Apostles : “ And distribution was made to every one according as he had need.”<sup>1</sup> Let him, therefore, consider the infirmities of such as are in need, and pay no regard to the ill-will of the envious. In all his ordinances let him always think on the retribution of God.



## CAPUT LVI.

### DE MENSA ABBATIS.

9 Apr. MENSA Abbatis cum hospitibus et pere-  
9 Aug. grinis sit semper. Quoties tamen minus  
9 Dec. sunt hospites, quos vult de fratribus vocare, in  
ipsius sit potestate. Seniorum autem unum,  
aut duos semper cum fratribus dimittendos  
procuret, propter disciplinam.





## CHAPTER LVI.

### OF THE ABBOT'S TABLE.

THE Abbot shall always take his meals with the guests and strangers. But as often as there are few guests, it shall be in his power to invite any of the Brethren he may choose. Let him take care, however, that one or two Seniors be always left with the Brethren, for the sake of discipline.



## CAPUT LVII.

### DE ARTIFICIBUS MONASTERII.

<sup>10 Apr.</sup> **ARTIFICES**, si sunt in Monasterio, cum  
<sup>10 Aug.</sup>  
<sup>10 Dec.</sup> omni humilitate et reverentia faciant  
ipsas artes, si tamen jusserit Abbas. Quod si  
aliquis ex eis extollitur pro scientia artis suæ,  
eo quod videatur aliquid conferre Monasterio,  
hic talis evellatur ab ipsa arte, et denuo per  
eam non transeat, nisi forte humiliato ei iterum  
Abbas jubeat.

Si quid vero ex operibus artificum venum-  
dandum est, videant ipsi, per quorum manus  
transigenda sunt, ne aliquam fraudem præsu-  
mant inferre. Memorentur Ananiæ et Sa-  
phiræ:<sup>1</sup> ne forte mortem quam illi in corpore  
pertulerunt, hanc isti, vel omnes qui aliquam  
fraudem de rebus Monasterii fecerint, in anima

<sup>1</sup> Act. v. 1-10.



## CHAPTER LVII.

### OF THE ARTIFICERS OF THE MONASTERY.

IF there be Artificers in the Monastery, let them exercise their crafts with all humility and reverence, provided the Abbot shall have ordered them. But if any of them be proud of the skill he hath in his craft, because he thereby seemeth to gain something for the Monastery, let him be removed from it, and not exercise it again, unless, after humbling himself, the Abbot shall permit him.

But if any of their work is to be sold, let those who make the bargain take heed and be guilty of no deception. Let them remember Ananias and Saphira,<sup>1</sup> lest they, or any who defraud the Monastery, should incur the death of their soul, as these did the death

patiantur. In ipsis autem pretiis non surripiat avaritiæ malum, sed semper aliquantulum vilius detur, quam a secularibus datur, ut in omnibus glorificetur Deus.

*Of the Artificers of the Monastery.* 235

of their body. And in the prices themselves, let not the vice of avarice creep in, but let things always be sold somewhat cheaper than by Seculars, that in all things God may be glorified.



## CAPUT LVIII.

### DE DISCIPLINA SUSCIPIENDORUM FRATRUM.

11 Apr. NOVITER veniens quis ad conversionem,  
11 Aug.  
11 Dec. non ei facilis tribuatur ingressus: sed sicut ait Apostolus: "Probate spiritus, si ex Deo sunt."<sup>1</sup> Ergo si veniens perseveraverit pulsans, et illatas sibi injurias, et difficultatem ingressus, post quatuor aut quinque dies visus fuerit patienter portare, et persistere petitioni suæ, annuatur ei ingressus, et sit in cella hospitum paucis diebus: postea sit in cella Novitiorum, ubi meditetur, et manducet, et dormiat.

Et senior ei talis deputetur, qui aptus sit ad lucrandas animas, et qui super eum omnino curiose intendat et sollicitus sit, si vere Deum quærit, et si sollicitus est ad opus Dei, ad

<sup>1</sup> 1 Joan. iv. 1.



## CHAPTER LVIII.

### OF THE MANNER OF RECEIVING BROTHERS TO RELIGION.

LET not an easy entrance be granted to one who cometh newly to Religious life, but, as the Apostle saith : "Try the Spirits if they be of God."<sup>1</sup> If, therefore, the new-comer persevere knocking, and continue for four or five days patiently to endure both the injuries offered to him and the difficulty made about his entrance, and persist in his petition ; leave to enter shall then be granted him, and he shall be in the guest Hall for a few days. Afterwards he shall be in the Novitiate, where he shall meditate, and eat, and sleep.

Let a Senior who has the address of winning souls to God, be appointed to watch over



obedientiam, ad opprobria. Prædicentur ei omnia dura et aspera, per quæ itur ad Deum. Et si promiserit de stabilitatis suæ perseverantia, post duorum mensium circulum legatur ei hæc Regula per ordinem, et dicatur ei: Ecce lex, sub qua militare vis; si potes observare, ingredi: si vero non potes, liber discede. Si adhuc steterit, tunc ducatur in supradictam cellam Novitiorum, et iterum probetur in omni patientia.

Et post sex mensium circulum relegatur ei Regula, ut sciat ad quod ingreditur. Et si adhuc stat, post quatuor menses iterum relegatur ei eadem Regula. Et si habita secum deliberatione, promiserit se omnia custodire, et cuncta sibi imperata servare, tunc suscipiatur in congregatione, sciens lege Regulæ constitutum, quod ei ex illa die non liceat egredi de monasterio, nec collum excutere de sub jugo Regulæ, quam sub tam morosa deliberatione licuit ei recusare aut suscipere.

<sup>12 Apr.</sup> Suscipiendus autem, in Oratorio coram  
<sup>12 Aug.</sup>  
<sup>12 Dec.</sup> omnibus promittat de stabilitate sua, et conversione morum suorum, et obedientia, coram Deo et Sanctis ejus, ut si aliquando aliter fecerit, ab eo se damnandum sciat quem irridet. De qua promissione sua faciat petitio-

him narrowly and carefully, to discover whether he truly seeks God, and is eager for the Work of God, for obedience and for humiliation. Let all the rigour and austerity by which we tend towards God be laid before him. And if he promise stability and perseverance, at the end of two months, let the whole Rule be read to him, with the addition of these words: "Behold the law under which thou desirest to fight; if thou canst observe it, enter in; if thou canst not, freely depart." If he shall still persevere, let him then be brought back to the aforesaid cell of the Novices, and be again tried in all patience. After the lapse of six months, let the Rule be read to him again, that he may know unto what he has come. If he still persevere, after four months, let the same Rule be read to him once more. If he shall then promise, after due deliberation, to keep and observe all things commanded him, let him be received into the Community, knowing that he is from that time forward under the law of the Rule, so that he can neither leave the Monastery nor shake off the yoke of the Rule, which, after so long a deliberation, he might have accepted or refused.

And when they admit him to profession, he

nem ad nomen Sanctorum quorum Reliquiæ ibi sunt, et Abbatis præsentis. Quam petitionem manu sua scribat: aut certe, si non scit litteras, alter ab eo rogatus scribat; et ille Novitius signum faciat, et manu sua eam super altare ponat. Quam dum posuerit, incipiat ipse Novitius mox hunc versum: "Suscipe me, Domine, secundum eloquium tuum, et vivam: et non confundas me ab exspectatione mea."<sup>1</sup> Quem versum omnis congregatio tertio respondeat, adjungentes: "Gloria Patri." Tunc ipse frater Novitius prosternatur singulorum pedibus, ut orent pro eo, et jam ex illa hora in congregatione reputetur.

Res si quas habet, aut eroget prius pauperibus, aut facta solemniter donatione, conferat Monasterio, nihil sibi reservans ex omnibus: quippe qui ex illo die nec proprii corporis potestatem se habiturum sciat. Mox ergo in Oratorio exuatur rebus propriis quibus vestitus est, et induatur rebus Monasterii. Illa autem vestimenta, quibus exutus est, reponantur in vestiario conservanda, ut si aliquando, suadente diabolo, consenserit ut egrediatur de Monasterio

<sup>1</sup> Ps. cxviii. 116.

shall, in the presence of all, make a promise before God and His Saints, of stability, amendment of manners, and obedience, in order that if at any time he shall act contrariwise he may know that he shall be condemned by Him Whom he mocketh. He shall draw up the form of this promise in the name of the Saints whose relics are on the Altar, and of the Abbot there present. With his own hand shall he write it, or if he knoweth not how, another at his request shall write it for him, and the Novice shall put his mark to it, and lay it with his own hand upon the Altar.

After doing this, let him presently begin the verse: "Uphold me O Lord according to Thy Word, and I shall live, and let me not be confounded in my expectation."<sup>1</sup> Let the whole Community repeat this three times, adding at the end, "Glory be to the Father." Then let the new Brother cast himself at the feet of all, that they may pray for him, and from that hour he shall be counted as one of the Community. If he hath any property, he shall either first bestow it upon the poor, or, by a formal gift, hand it over to the Monastery, without any reserve for himself; because for

**242** *De disciplina suscipiendorum Fratrum.*

(quod absit), tunc exutus rebus Monasterii, projiciatur. Illam tamen petitionem, quam desuper altare Abbas tulit, non recipiat, sed in Monasterio reservetur.

the future he must know that he hath not so much as power over his own body. Let him therefore presently, in the Oratory, be stripped of his own garments and be clothed in those of the Monastery. But the garments of which he is divested shall be kept in the wardrobe, that if (which God forbid) he should consent, by the persuasion of the devil, to leave the Monastery, he may be stripped of his habit and expelled. But he shall not have again, the writing of his profession which the Abbot received from him at the Altar ; that shall be kept in the Monastery.





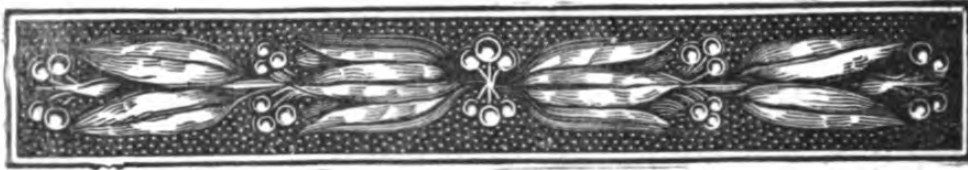
## CAPUT LIX.

### DE FILIIS NOBILIIUM VEL PAUPERUM, QUI OFFERUNTUR.

<sup>13 Apr.</sup>  
<sup>13 Aug.</sup>  
<sup>13 Dec.</sup> Si quis forte de nobilibus offert filium suum Deo in Monasterio, si ipse puer minori ætate est, parentes ejus faciant petitionem quam supra diximus. Et cum oblatione ipsam petitionem et manum pueri involvant in palla altaris, et sic eum offerant. De rebus autem suis aut in præsentî petitione promittant sub jurejurando, quia nunquam per se, nunquam per suspectam personam, nec quolibet modo ei aliquando aliquid dent, aut tribuant occasionem habendi.

Vel certe, si hoc facere noluerint et aliquid offerre voluerint in eleemosynam Monasterio pro mercede sua, faciant ex rebus, quas dare





## CHAPTER LIX.

OF THE SONS OF NOBLES, OR OF THE POOR THAT  
ARE OFFERED.

IF any nobleman shall perchance offer his son to God in the Monastery, let the parents, if the child himself be under age, make the aforesaid promise for him, and together with the oblation\* let them wrap that promise and the hand of the boy in the Altar Cloth, and thus dedicate him to God. But with regard to his property, they shall, in the said document, promise under oath, that they will never either give or furnish him with an occasion of having anything, either by themselves, or

\* This was a host and a chalice in which there was some wine. The child held them in his hands during the ceremony of dedication. *Constit: Lanfranci. Cap. xviii.*

246 *De filiis nobilium vel pauperum.*

volunt Monasterio, donationem, reservato sibi (si ita voluerint) usufructuario. Atque ita omnia obstruantur, ut nulla suspicio remaneat puero, per quam deceptus perire possit (quod absit), quod experimento didicimus. Similiter autem et pauperiores faciant. Qui vero ex toto nihil habent, simpliciter petitionem faciant, et cum oblatione offerant filium suum coram testibus.

by any other person or means whatsoever. If they will not do this, but wish to offer something as an alms to the Monastery, by way of acknowledgment, let them make a donation of whatever they please, and reserve the income of it to themselves during life. Let matters be so managed that no expectation remain with the child, whereby being deceived he may perish, (which God forbid), as we have learnt by experience in the case of others. Let those who are poorer act in the same way. But such as have nothing whatever, shall simply make the promise, and with the oblation give up their son, before witnesses.



## CAPUT LX.

### DE SACERDOTIBUS, QUI VOLUERINT IN MONAS- TERIO HABITARE.

<sup>14 Apr.</sup> SI quis de ordine Sacerdotum in Monas-  
<sup>14 Aug.</sup> terio se suscipi rogaverit, non quidem ei  
<sup>14 Dec.</sup> citius assentiatur: tamen si omnino perstiterit  
in hac petitione, sciat se omnem Regulæ dis-  
ciplinam servaturum nec aliquid ei relaxabitur,  
ut sit, sicut scriptum est: “Amice, ad quid  
venisti?”<sup>1</sup> Concedatur ei tamen post Abbatem  
stare, et benedicere, aut Missam tenere; si  
tamen jusserit ei Abbas. Sin alias, nullatenus  
aliqua præsumat, sciens se disciplinæ regulari  
subditum, et magis humilitatis exempla omni-  
bus det.

Si forte ordinationis aut alicujus rei causa

<sup>1</sup> Matth. xxvi. 50.



## CHAPTER LX.

### OF PRIESTS WHO DESIRE TO DWELL IN THE MONASTERY.

IF any one of the priestly order shall request to be received into the Monastery, let not permission be speedily granted even unto him. However, if he shall still persist in his request, let him know that he will have to keep all the discipline appointed by the Rule, and that no relaxation will be made in his favour, according to that which is written : " Friend, for what art thou come ?" <sup>1</sup> Nevertheless he shall be allowed to stand next after the Abbot, to give the blessing, and to say Mass, provided the Abbot order him. Otherwise he shall presume to do nothing, knowing that he is subject to regular discipline, and particularly obliged to give unto

fuerit in Monasterio, illum locum attendat, quando ingressus est in Monasterium, non illum, qui ei pro reverentia Sacerdotii concessus est. Clericorum autem si quis eodem desiderio Monasterio sociari voluerit, loco mediocri collocetur, et ipsum tamen, si promittit de observatione Regulæ, vel propria stabilitate.

*Priests who desire to dwell in the Monastery. 251*

all examples of humility. If his position in the Monastery shall have been given to him on account of his Order, or for any other reason whatsoever, let him remember that his true place is the one fixed by the time of his entrance, and not that which was yielded to him out of reverence for his Priesthood. But if any Cleric shall likewise desire to be admitted into the Monastery, let him be put in a middle rank, but only on condition that he promise observance of the Rule and stability in it.





## CAPUT LXI.

### DE MONACHIS PEREGRINIS, QUALITER SUSCIPIANTUR.

15 Apr. Si quis Monachus peregrinus de longin-  
15 Aug.  
15 Dec. quis provinciis supervenerit, si pro hospite  
voluerit habitare in Monasterio, et contentus  
fuerit consuetudine loci quam invenerit, et non  
forte superfluitate sua perturbat Monasterium,  
sed simpliciter contentus est quod invenerit,  
suscipiatur quanto tempore cupit. Si quæ  
tamen rationabiliter et cum humilitate chari-  
tatis reprehendit aut ostendit, tractet Abbas  
prudenter, ne forte eum propter hoc ipsum  
Dominus direxerit. Si vero postea voluerit  
stabilitatem suam firmare, non renuatur talis  
voluntas, et maxime, quia tempore hospitali-  
tatis potuit ejus vita dignosci.



## CHAPTER LXI.

OF MONKS THAT ARE STRANGERS, HOW THEY  
ARE TO BE RECEIVED.

IF any Monk who is a stranger shall come from distant places and desire to dwell in the Monastery as a guest, and being content with the customs he findeth there, doth not trouble the Monastery by his superfluous wants, but is satisfied with what he findeth, let him be entertained for as long a time as he desireth. And if he reasonably, and with loving humility, reprehend or point out any abuse, let the Abbot prudently take notice of what he saith; for the Lord hath perchance sent him for that very reason. But if, after a time, he should desire to take up his abode there, let him not be refused; especially since they had ample opportunities for dis-

16 Apr. Quod si superfluous, aut vitiosus in-  
 16 Aug. ventus fuerit tempore hospitalitatis, non  
 16 Dec. solum non debet sociari corpori Monasterii,  
 verum etiam dicatur ei honeste ut discedat, ne  
 ejus miseria etiam alii vitientur. Quod si non  
 fuerit talis qui mereatur projici, non solum si  
 petierit suscipiatur Congregationi sociandus,  
 verum etiam suadeatur ut stet, ut ejus  
 exemplo alii erudiantur, et quia in omni loco  
 uni Domino servitur, et uni Regi militatur.

Quem etiam si talem esse perspexerit Abbas,  
 liceat eum in superiore aliquantulum con-  
 stituere loco. Non solum autem Monachum,  
 sed etiam de supradictis gradibus Sacerdotum  
 vel Clericorum, stabilire potest Abbas in  
 majori, quam ingreditur loco, si ejus talem  
 prospexerit esse vitam. Caveat autem Abbas,  
 ne aliquando de alio noto Monasterio Mona-  
 chum ad habitandum suscipiat, sine consensu  
 Abbatis ejus, aut litteris commendatitiis; quia  
 scriptum est: "Quod tibi non vis fieri, alteri  
 ne faceris." <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Matth. vii. 12.

covering his manner of life, during the time he lived among them as a guest.

If, however, during that time he was found troublesome or faulty, not only shall he not be incorporated with the Community, but even be told with all civility to depart, lest others should be corrupted by his bad behaviour. But if he doth not deserve to be sent away, not only let him be received into the society of the Community, when he makes the request, but let him even be persuaded to stay, that by his example others may be instructed; because in every place we serve one God, and fight under one King.

The Abbot may also put him in a somewhat higher rank, if he shall find him well deserving of it. And not only may he exalt a Monk to a higher place than is his due, but also any of the aforesaid Priests or Clerics, if their lives be such as to deserve it. Let him, however, beware never at any time to receive a Monk into his Community from a known Monastery, without the consent of his Abbot, or letters of commendation from him, because it is written: "What thou wilt not have done to thyself, do not thou to another." <sup>1</sup>



## CAPUT LXII.

### DE SACERDOTIBUS MONASTERII.

<sup>17 Apr.</sup> SI quis Abbas sibi Presbyterum, vel  
<sup>17 Aug.</sup> Diaconum ordinare petierit, de suis  
<sup>17 Dec.</sup> eligat qui dignus sit Sacerdotio fungi. Ordina-  
turus autem caveat elationem aut superbiam ;  
nec quicquam præsumat, nisi quod ei ab Abbate  
præcipitur, sciens se multo magis disciplinæ  
regulari subditum. Nec occasione Sacerdotii  
obliviscatur Regulæ obedientiam et disci-  
plinam, sed magis ac magis in Domino pro-  
ficiat.

Locum vero illum semper attendat, quo  
ingressus est Monasterium, præter officium  
altaris, et si forte electio Congregationis et  
voluntas Abbatis pro vitæ merito eum pro-  
movere voluerit : qui tamen regulam a Decanis,



## CHAPTER LXII.

### OF THE PRIESTS OF THE MONASTERY.

IF any Abbot desire to have a Priest or Deacon promoted to Holy Orders, let him choose from his Monks, one who is worthy to fill the office of Priesthood. But let him that is ordained beware of haughtiness and pride, and presume not to do anything except what is ordered by the Abbot; well aware, that he is now much more subject to the discipline of the Rule. Let him not, by reason of his Priesthood, forget the obedience and discipline of the Rule, but rather strive to advance more and more in the service of God.

He shall, however, take his rank from the time he entered the Monastery, except in his office at the Altar, and also, in case the Com-



vel Præpositis constitutam sibi servandam sciat; quod si aliter præsumpserit, non ut sacerdos, sed ut rebellis judicetur. Et sæpe admonitus si non correxerit, etiam Episcopus adhibeatur in testimonium. Quod si nec sic emendaverit, clarescentibus culpis, projiciatur de Monasterio; si tamen talis fuerit ejus contumacia, ut subdi aut obedire Regulæ nolit.



munity's choice and the Abbot's desire be to advance him higher for his holiness of life. He must, nevertheless, observe the rules prescribed by the Deans or Provosts, and if he presume to act contrariwise, he shall be judged, not as a Priest, but as a rebel. If after frequent admonitions he do not amend, the Bishop shall be informed of his behaviour. If even after this he grow not better, and his faults become notorious, he shall be thrust out of the Monastery, provided his disobedience be such that he will not submit and obey the Rule.



## CAPUT LXIII.

### DE ORDINE CONGREGATIONIS.

18 Apr. ORDINES suos in Monasterio ita conser-  
18 Aug. vent, ut conversionis tempus et vitæ  
18 Dec. meritum discernit, vel ut Abbas constituerit. Qui Abbas non conturbet gregem sibi commissum, nec quasi libera utens potestate, injuste disponat aliquid: sed cogitet semper, quia de omnibus judiciis et operibus suis redditurus est Deo rationem. Ergo secundum ordines quos constituerit, vel quos habuerint ipsi fratres, sic accedant ad Pacem, ad Communionem, ad Psalmum imponendum, in Choro standum. Et in omnibus omnino locis ætas non discernatur in ordine, nec præjudicet; quia Samuel et Daniel pueri Presbyteros judicaverunt.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 1 Reg. vii. 15.—Daniel. xiii. 51, et seq.



## CHAPTER LXIII.

### OF THE ORDER OF THE COMMUNITY.

THE Brethren shall hold that rank in the Monastery which is fixed for them by the time of their coming to Religion, by the merit of their life, or by the appointment of the Abbot. And let not the Abbot disquiet the flock committed to him, nor, as it were by an arbitrary use of power, arrange anything unjustly ; but let him always consider that he is to give an account to God of all his judgments and of all his works.

Therefore, let the Brethren receive the Pax, approach to Communion, intone a psalm, and stand in choir, according to that order which he shall appoint, or which they hold among themselves. In all places without exception, let not order be decided by age, neither let it

Ergo exceptis iis, quos (ut diximus) altiori consilio Abbas prætulit, vel degradaverit certis ex causis, reliqui omnes, ut convertuntur, ita sint, ut, verbi gratia, qui secunda diei hora venerit in Monasterium, juniorem se noverit esse illo qui prima hora diei venit, cujuslibet ætatis aut dignitatis sit. Pueris vero per omnia ab omnibus disciplina teneatur.

19 Apr. Juniores ergo Priores suos honorent :  
 19 Aug.  
 19 Dec. Priores vero juniores diligant. In ipsa autem appellatione nominum nulli liceat alium puro nomine appellare; sed Priores juniores suos fratres nominent, juniores autem Priores suos "Nonnos"\* vocent, quod intelligitur paterna reverentia. Abbas autem, quia vices Christi agere videtur, Dominus et Abbas vocetur: non sua assumptione, sed honore et amore Christi. Ipse autem cogitet, et sic se exhibeat ut dignus sit tali honore.

Ubicumque autem sibi obviant fratres, junior a Priore benedictionem petat. Trans-eunte majore, junior surgat et det ei locum sedendi. Nec præsumat junior consedere, nisi ei præcipiat senior suus: ut fiat quod scriptum est: "Honore invicem prævenientes."<sup>1</sup> Pueri

<sup>1</sup> Rom. xii. 10.

be a prejudice to any man ; for Samuel and Daniel, though mere youths, sat in judgment upon the Elders. With the exception, therefore, of those whom for special reasons the Abbot shall advance or lower, let all the rest keep the order of their entrance into Religion. For example : He who cometh at the second hour of the day must know that he is lower in the Monastery than the man who came at the first hour, no matter what his age or dignity may be. But with regard to children, let them be kept under discipline on all occasions, by all indiscriminately.

Let the Juniors, therefore, honour their Seniors, and the Seniors love the Juniors. But in addressing each other by name, no one shall call another by his simple name ; let the Seniors call the Juniors Brothers, and let the Juniors call the Seniors, "Reverend Fathers."\* But because the Abbot representeth the person of Christ, he shall be called "Domnus," and "Abbot," not as if he took this title upon himself, but out of honour and love for Christ. Let him re-

\* *Nonnos* is a Latinized Egyptian word, which may be rendered into English by "Reverend Fathers."

parvuli, vel adolescentes, in Oratorio vel ad mensam, cum disciplina ordines suos consequantur. Foris autem vel ubiubi, custodiam habeant et disciplinam, usque dum ad intelligibilem ætatem perveniant.

member to conduct himself in such a way, as to be worthy of so great honour.

Wheresoever the Brethren meet each other, let the Junior ask a blessing from the Senior. When the Senior passeth by, let the Junior rise, and give place to him to sit down. Nor shall the Junior presume to sit with him, unless his Senior bid him do so, in order to accomplish that which is written : "In honour preventing one another." <sup>1</sup> Little children, or youths, shall keep their respective places in the Oratory or at table with due discipline. Elsewhere, careful watch shall be kept over them, till they come to the age of understanding, in order to ensure their good behaviour.





## CAPUT LXIV.

### DE ORDINANDO ABBATE.

<sup>20 Apr.</sup> <sup>20 Aug.</sup> <sup>20 Dec.</sup> IN Abbatis ordinatione illa semper consideretur ratio, ut hic constituatur, quem sibi omnis concors Congregatio, secundum timorem Dei, sive etiam pars quamvis parva Congregationis, saniori consilio elegerit. Vitæ autem merito, et sapientiæ doctrina eligatur, qui ordinandus est, etiam si ultimus fuerit in ordine Congregationis. Quod si etiam omnis Congregatio vitiis suis (quod quidem absit) consentientem personam pari consilio elegerit, et vitia ipsa aliquatenus in notitiam Episcopi (ad cuius Diœcesim pertinet locus ipse) vel Abbatibus, aut Christianis vicinis claruerint, prohibeant pravorum prævalere consensum, et domui Dei dignum constituent dispensatorem ;



## CHAPTER LXIV.

### OF THE ELECTION OF THE ABBOT.

IN the election of an Abbot let the following method always be observed; that he be constituted Abbot whom either the whole Community by common consent shall elect in the fear of God, or whom a part of the same, though few in number, shall choose with greater wisdom and discretion. Let him who is to be raised to this dignity be chosen on account of his virtuous life, his learning, and his wisdom; even though he be the last in the Community. But although the entire Community (which God forbid) shall with one accord choose a man who supports them in their evil practices, and these, by some means become known to the Bishop in whose

scientes, pro hoc se recepturos mercedem bonam, si illud caste et zelo Dei faciant, sicut e contrario peccatum, si negligent.

21 Apr. Ordinatus autem Abbas cogitet semper  
21 Aug.  
21 Dec. quale onus suscepit, et cui redditurus est rationem villicationis suæ; sciatque sibi oportere prodesse magis, quam præesse. Oportet ergo eum esse doctum in lege divina, ut sciat unde proferat nova et vetera:<sup>1</sup> castum, sobrium, misericordem; et semper superexaltet misericordiam iudicio, ut idem ipse consequatur. Oderit vitia, diligat fratres.

In ipsa autem correctione prudenter agat, et ne quid nimis; ne dum nimis eradere cupit æruginem, frangatur vas; suaque fragilitate semper suspectus sit, memineritque calamum quassatum non conterendum.<sup>2</sup> In quibus non dicimus, ut permittat nutriri vitia, sed prudenter et cum charitate ea amputet, prout viderit cuique expedire, sicut jam diximus; et studeat plus amari, quam timeri. Non sit turbulentus et anxius, non sit nimius et obstinatus, non zelotypus et nimis suspiciosus, quia nunquam requiescet.

In ipsis imperiis suis sit providus et consideratus, sive secundum Deum, sive secundum

<sup>1</sup> Matth. xiii. 52.

<sup>2</sup> Isai. xlii. 3.

diocese that place is situated, or to the Abbots, or to the neighbouring Christians; let them nullify the election of these wicked men, and appoint a worthy steward over the House of God; knowing that for this they shall receive a good reward, if they do it with a good intention, and for the love of God; and, on the contrary, that they sin if they neglect to do so. When once established in his office, let the Abbot always reflect how weighty a burthen he hath taken upon himself, and unto Whom he must give an account of his stewardship. Let him also know that it is more becoming in him to do good unto others, than to hold sway over them. He must therefore be learned in the Divine Law, that he may know whence to "bring forth new things and old;"<sup>1</sup> he must be chaste, sober, and merciful, and always prefer mercy to justice, that he himself may obtain mercy. He shall hate vice, and love the Brethren. Even in his corrections he shall act with prudence, and be guilty of no excess, lest, while too eagerly scouring off the rust, the vessel itself be broken. Let him ever bear in mind his own frailty, and remember that "the bruised reed must not be broken."<sup>2</sup>

seculum sint. Opera quæ injungit, discernat ac temperet, cogitans discretionem sancti Jacob, dicentis: "Si greges meos plus in ambulando fecero laborare, morientur cuncti una die."<sup>1</sup> Hæc ergo aliaque testimonia discretionis matris virtutis sumens, sic omnia temperet, ut sit quod et fortes cupiant, et infirmi non refugiant. Et præcipue, ut præsentem Regulam in omnibus conservet; ut, dum bene ministraverit, audiat a Domino, quod servus bonus, qui erogavit triticum conservis suis in tempore suo: "Amen dico vobis, ait, super omnia bona sua constituet eum."<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Genes. xxxiii. 13.

<sup>2</sup> Matth. xxiv. 47.

By this, we do not mean that he should allow vices to grow up, but, as we have said before, with prudence and charity, seek to root them out in such a way as shall be expedient for each case; and let his aim be rather to excite love, than to inspire fear. He must observe a calmness in his ways, and be not full of care; neither let him be over exacting, nor head-strong, nor jealous, nor over suspicious, for then he will never be at rest. Even in what he orders, whether it pertain to God or to temporal matters, let him be prudent and considerate. Let him be discreet and moderate in the works which he enjoins, bearing in mind the discretion of holy Jacob who said; "If I shall cause my flocks to be over driven, they will all die in one day." <sup>1</sup> Therefore, adopting these and the like principles of discretion, which is the mother of all virtues, let him so temper all things that the strong may have somewhat to strive after, and the weak, nought from which they may flee away. Especially let him observe this present rule in all things, that after having ministered well, he may hear from the Lord what the good servant heard, who gave corn to his fellow servants in due time: "Amen, I say unto you, over all his goods will he place him." <sup>2</sup>





## CAPUT LXV.

### DE PRÆPOSITO MONASTERII.

22 Apr. SÆPIUS quidem contingit, ut per ordina-  
22 Aug. tionem Præpositi scandala gravia in  
22 Dec. Monasteriis oriantur, dum sint aliqui maligno  
spiritu superbiæ inflati, qui æstimantes se  
secundos Abbates esse, assumentes sibi tyran-  
nidem, scandala nutriunt, dissensiones in  
Congregatione faciunt, et maxime in illis  
locis, ubi ab eodem Sacerdote, vel ab eisdem  
Abbatibus qui Abbatem ordinant, ab ipsis  
etiam et Præpositus ordinatur. Quod quam  
sit absurdum facile advertitur, quia ab ipso  
initio ordinationis materia ei datur superbiendi,  
dum ei suggeritur a cogitationibus suis, exutum  
eum esse a potestate Abbatis sui, quia ab ipsis  
est ordinatus, a quibus et Abbas. Hinc susci-  
tantur invidiæ, rixæ, detractiones, æmulationes,





## CHAPTER LXV.

### OF THE PREPOSITUS OR PROVOST OF THE MONAS- TERY.

IT often happens that by the appointment of a Provost,\* great scandals arise in Monasteries; because some, so appointed, being puffed up with the malignant spirit of pride, and esteeming themselves to be second Abbots, take upon themselves to tyrannize over others, to foster scandals, and to promote dissensions in the Community; and especially in those places where the Provost is instituted by the same Bishops or Abbots as the Abbot himself. How foolish this custom is, may easily be perceived; for a handle for pride is given to the Provost from the very beginning of his

\* This corresponds to our Prior. St. Benedict uses *Praepositus* and *Prior* synonymously.

dissensiones, exordinationes; et dum contraria sibi invicem Abbas Præpositusque sentiunt, et ipsorum necesse est sub hac dissensione animas periclitari; et ii qui sub ipsis sunt, dum adulantur partibus, eunt in perditionem. Cujus periculi malum illos respicit in capite, qui talibus in ordinatione se fecerunt auctores. Ideoque nos prævidemus expedire propter pacis charitatisque custodiam, in Abbatis pendere arbitrio ordinationem Monasterii sui. Et si potest fieri, per Decanos ordinetur (ut antea disposuimus) omnis utilitas Monasterii, prout Abbas disposuerit: ut dum pluribus committitur, unus non superbiat.

23 Apr.  
23 Aug.  
23 Dec. Quod si aut locus expetit, aut Congregatio petierit rationabiliter cum humilitate, et Abbas judicaverit expedire, quemcumque elegerit Abbas, cum consilio fratrum timentium Deum, ordinet ipse sibi Præpositum. Qui tamen Præpositus illa agat cum reverentia quæ ab Abbate suo ei injuncta fuerint, nihil contra Abbatis voluntatem, aut ordinationem faciens: quia quantum prælatus est cæteris, tantum eum oportet sollicite observare præcepta Regulæ.

Qui Præpositus, si repertus fuerit vitiosus, aut elatione deceptus superbiæ, aut contemptor

appointment, because his thoughts suggest to him that he is now released from the power of his Abbot, since he is instituted by the very persons by whom the Abbot himself is instituted. Hence arise envy, quarrels, detractions, rivalries, dissensions, and disorders; and while the Abbot and Provost are at variance with each other, it must of necessity follow, that their souls are imperilled during this dissension; those also who are under their charge run to destruction by adhering, some to one side, and some to the other. The sin of this danger lieth principally upon those who were the authors of such an appointment. Therefore, we foresee that it is expedient for the preservation of peace and charity, that the entire government of the Monastery depend upon the will of the Abbot. As we have before arranged, let all the business of the Monastery be transacted, if possible, by the Deans, according as the Abbot shall have determined, in order that, many being sharers in the same office, no one may become proud.

But if either the circumstances of the place require a Provost, or the Community with reason and humility ask for one, and the Abbot think it expedient, he shall with the

sanctæ Regulæ fuerit comprobatus, admoneatur verbis usque quater: si non emendaverit, adhibeatur ei correctio disciplinæ regularis. Quod si neque sic correxerit, tunc dejiciatur de ordine Præposituræ, et alius, qui dignus est, in loco ejus subrogetur. Quod si et postea in Congregatione quietus et obediens non fuerit, etiam de Monasterio expellatur. Cogitet tamen Abbas, se de omnibus judiciis Deo redditurum rationem, ne forte invidiæ aut zeli flamma urat animam.

advice of such of the Brethren as have the fear of God before them, nominate and appoint one himself. Let the Provost do with reverence what shall be enjoined him by the Abbot, in no way going against his will or ordinance ; because the higher he is advanced above the rest, the more carefully ought he to observe all the precepts of the Rule. If the Provost be found viciously inclined, or deceived by the haughtiness of pride, or a contemner of the Holy Rule, let him be warned by word of mouth four times ; if he do not amend, let the correction of regular discipline be applied to him. If with this he do not grow better, he shall be deposed from the dignity of the Provostship, and a worthier man put in his place. If after this he be not quiet and obedient in the community, let him be expelled from the Monastery. The Abbot shall nevertheless bear in mind, that for all his judgments he shall have to give an account to God, lest perchance his soul be misled by a mistaken zeal of envy and jealousy.



## CAPUT LXVI.

### DE OSTIARIO MONASTERII.

<sup>24 Apr.</sup> AD portam Monasterii ponatur senex  
<sup>24 Aug.</sup>  
<sup>24 Dec.</sup> sapiens, qui sciat accipere responsum et reddere; cujus maturitas eum non sinat vagari. Qui Portarius cellam debet habere juxta portam, ut venientes semper præsentem inveniant, a quo responsum accipiant. Et mox ut aliquis pulsaverit aut pauper clamaverit, "Deo gratias" respondeat, aut benedicat; et cum omni mansuetudine timoris Dei reddat responsum festinanter, cum fervore charitatis. Qui Portarius, si indiget solatio, juniorem fratrem accipiat.

Monasterium autem (si fieri potest) ita debet construi, ut omnia necessaria, id est, aqua, molendinum, hortus, pistrinum, vel artes diversæ intra Monasterium exerceantur, ut





## CHAPTER LXVI.

### OF THE PORTER OF THE MONASTERY.

AT the gate of the Monastery, let there be stationed a wise old man, who knows how to receive and to give an answer, and whose ripeness of age will not suffer him to wander from his post. He ought to have a cell near the gate, that such as come may always find him at hand, ready to give them an answer.

As soon as any one shall knock, or a poor man cry for aid, let him presently answer: "Thanks be to God," or invoke a blessing; and with all mildness of the fear of God, let him reply speedily in the fervour of charity. If he need help, he shall have a junior Brother with him. The Monastery ought, if possible, to be so constructed as to contain within itself



non sit necessitas Monachis vagandi foras;  
quia omnino non expedit animabus eorum.  
Hanc autem Regulam sæpius volumus in  
Congregatione legi, ne quis fratrum de ignor-  
antia se excuset.

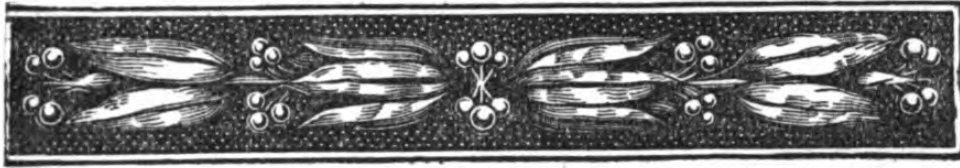
all necessaries, that is, water, a mill, a garden, and a bakehouse; also that the various crafts be exercised within it, so that there be no occasion for Monks to go abroad, because it is in no wise expedient for their souls. We wish this rule to be frequently read in the Community, that no one may excuse himself on the score of ignorance.



## CAPUT LXVII.

### DE FRATRIBUS IN VIA DIRECTIS.

25 Apr. DIRIGENDI fratres in via, omnium fra-  
25 Aug. trum, vel Abbatis orationi se commen-  
25 Dec. dent: et semper ad orationem ultimam Operis  
Dei commemoratio omnium absentium fiat.  
Revertentes autem de via fratres, ipso die quo  
redeunt, per omnes canonicas horas, dum  
expletur Opus Dei, prostrati solo Oratorii ab  
omnibus petant orationem propter excessus,  
ne quid forte subriperit in via visus, aut  
auditus malæ rei, aut otiosi sermonis. Nec  
præsumat quisquam aliis referre quæcumque  
foris Monasterium viderit aut audierit, quia  
plurima destructio est. Quod si quis præ-  
sumpserit, vindictæ regulari subjaceat. Simi-  
liter, et qui præsumpserit claustra Monas-



## CHAPTER LXVII.

### OF BRETHREN WHO ARE SENT ON A JOURNEY.

LET those who are to be sent on a journey commend themselves to the prayers of all the Brethren and of the Abbot, and always at the last prayer of the Work of God let a commemoration be made of all the absent. When they come back, they shall, on the very day of their return, lie prostrate on the ground of the Oratory during all the Canonical Hours, while the Work of God is being fulfilled, and beg the prayers of all, on account of the faults they may have committed on the way, by sight or hearing, or by idle discourse. Let no one presume to relate unto others what he has seen or heard outside the Monastery; because therefrom arise many evil consequences. If any one shall

terii egredi vel quocumque ire, vel quid-  
piam quamvis parvum sine Abbatis jussione  
facere.

*Of Brethren who are sent on a Journey.* 285

presume to do so, let him be liable to the penalty prescribed by the Rule. In like manner shall he be punished who shall presume to break the enclosure of the Monastery, or go anywhere, or do anything, how trifling soever, without leave of the Abbot.



## CAPUT LXVIII.

### SI FRATRI IMPOSSIBILIA INJUNGANTUR.

26 Apr. SI cui fratri aliqua forte gravia aut im-  
26 Aug. possibilis injunguntur, suscipiat quidem  
26 Dec. jubentis imperium cum omni mansuetudine et obedientia. Quod si omnino virium suarum viderit pondus excedere, impossibilitatis suæ causas ei qui sibi præest patienter et opportune suggerat, non superbiendo, aut resistendo, vel contradicendo. Quod si post suggestionem suam in sua sententia Prioris imperium perduraverit, sciat junior ita sibi expedire, et ex charitate confidens de adjutorio Dei, obediat.





## CHAPTER LXVIII.

### IF A BROTHER BE ORDERED TO DO IMPOSSIBILITIES.

IF any hard or impossible commands be enjoined a Brother, let him receive the injunctions of him who biddeth him with all mildness and obedience. But if he shall see that the burthen altogether exceedeth the measure of his strength, let him patiently and in due season state the cause of this inability unto his Superior, without manifesting any pride, resistance, or contradiction. If after his suggestion, the Prior shall still persist in his command, let the Brother know that it is for his good, and trusting in the assistance of God, let him obey through love for Him.



## CAPUT LXIX.

UT IN MONASTERIO NON PRÆSUMAT ALTER  
ALTERUM DEFENDERE.

27 Apr. SUMMOPERE præcavendum est, ne quavis  
27 Aug.  
27 Dec. occasione præsumat alter alterum defendere Monachum in Monasterio, aut quasi tueri, etiamsi qualibet consanguinitatis propinquitate jungantur. Nec quolibet modo id a Monachis præsumatur, quia exinde gravissima occasio scandalorum oriri potest. Quod si quis hæc transgressus fuerit, acrius coerceatur.



## CHAPTER LXIX.

THAT NO ONE PRESUME TO DEFEND ANOTHER IN  
THE MONASTERY.

SPECIAL care must be taken, that on no occasion one Monk presume to uphold or defend another in the Monastery, even though they be very near of kin. In no way whatsoever let any Monk presume to do this, because exceeding great occasion of scandal may arise from thence. If anyone shall transgress in this point, let him be severely punished.



## CAPUT LXX.

UT NON PRÆSUMAT QUISQUAM ALIQUEM PASSIM  
CÆDERE AUT EXCOMMUNICARE.

28 Apr. UT vitetur in Monasterio omnis præ-  
28 Aug. sumptionis occasio, ordinamus atque con-  
28 Dec. stituimus, ut nulli liceat quemquam fratrum  
suorum excommunicare aut cædere, nisi cui  
potestas ab Abbate data fuerit. Peccantes  
autem coram omnibus arguantur, ut cæteri  
metum habeant. Infantibus vero usque ad  
quintum decimum annum ætatis, disciplinæ  
diligentia sit, et custodia adhibeatur ab omni-  
bus: sed et hoc cum omni mensura et ratione.  
Nam in fortiori ætate qui præsumpserit ali-  
quatenus sine præcepto Abbatis, vel in ipsis  
infantibus sine discretione exarserit, disciplinæ  
regulari subiaceat, quia scriptum est: "Quod  
tibi non vis fieri, alii ne feceris." <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Tob. iv. 16.



## CHAPTER LXX.

### THAT NO ONE PRESUME TO STRIKE OR EXCOMMUNICATE ANOTHER.

THAT every occasion of presumption may be avoided in the Monastery, we ordain and decree, that no one, unless the Abbot hath given him authority, shall be allowed to excommunicate or to strike any of his Brethren. Such as trespass in this respect shall be reprehended in the presence of all, that the rest may be inspired with fear. But let all have strict discipline and care over children, until their fifteenth year ; yet this also must be done with moderation and discretion. For he who shall, without the Abbot's leave, presume to chastise such as are above that age, or to be unduly severe even towards the children, shall be liable to regular discipline, because it is written : " What thou wouldst not have done to thyself, do not thou unto another." <sup>1</sup>



## CAPUT LXXI.

UT OBEDIENTES SINT SIBI INVICEM FRATRES.

<sup>29 Apr.</sup> <sup>29 Aug.</sup> <sup>29 Dec.</sup> OBEDIENTIÆ bonum non solum Abbati exhibendum est ab omnibus, sed etiam sibi invicem ita obediant fratres, scientes se per hanc obedientiæ viam ituros ad Deum. Præmisso ergo Abbatis, aut Præpositorum qui ab eo constituuntur imperio, (cui non permitimus privata imperia præponi), de cætero omnes juniores Prioribus suis omni charitate et sollicitudine obediant. Quod si quis contentiosus reperitur, corripiatur.

Si quis autem pro quavis minima causa, ab Abbate vel a quocumque Priore suo corripiatur quolibet modo ; vel si leviter senserit animum Prioris cujuscumque contra se iratum, vel commotum, quamvis modice, mox sine mora tamdiu prostratus in terra ante pedes ejus jaceat satis-



## CHAPTER LXXI.

THAT THE BRETHREN BE OBEDIENT TO EACH  
OTHER.

THE service of obedience is not to be rendered to the Abbot only, but the Brethren shall also mutually obey each other, knowing that by this path of obedience they shall go unto God. Therefore, when the command of the Abbot, or of other Superiors constituted by him, have been first obeyed, (to which we suffer no private orders to be preferred), the Juniors shall obey their Seniors with all charity and diligence. If anyone be found contentious, let him be rebuked.

But if a Brother be rebuked for even the least thing by the Abbot, or by any of his Seniors ; or if he shall perceive that the mind of his Senior is even slightly, be it never so little, moved against him, he shall, without



294 *Ut obedientes sint sibi invicem fratres.*

faciens, usque dum benedictione sanetur illa commotio. Quod si quis contempserit facere, aut si contumax fuerit, de Monasterio expeliatur.

*That the Brethren be obedient to each other. 295*

delay, prostrate himself at his feet, and remain there till that commotion be appeased and he receive a blessing. If anyone be too proud to do this, let him be liable either to corporal punishment, or if he prove contumacious, let him be expelled from the Monastery.

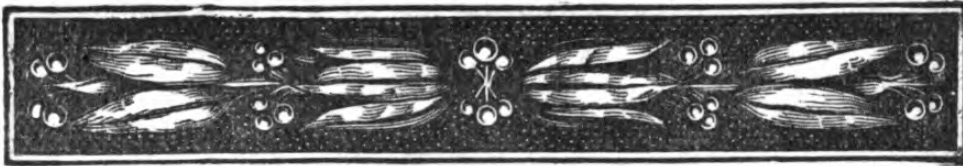


## CAPUT LXXII.

### DE ZELO BONO, QUEM DEBENT HABERE MONACHI.

<sup>30 Apr.</sup> SICUT est zelus amaritudinis malus, qui  
<sup>30 Aug.</sup>  
<sup>30 Dec.</sup> separat a Deo, et ducit ad infernum: ita  
est zelus bonus, qui separat a vitiis, et ducit ad  
Deum et ad vitam æternam. Hunc ergo zelum  
ferventissimo amore exerceant Monachi, id est,  
ut "honore se invicem præveniant."<sup>1</sup> Infirmi-  
tates suas sive corporum sive morum patien-  
tissime tolerant: obedientiam sibi certatim  
impendant. Nullus quod sibi utile judicat  
sequatur, sed quod magis alii. Charitatem  
fraternitatis casto impendant amore; Deum  
timeant; Abbatem suum sincera et humili  
charitate diligant; Christo omnino nihil præ-  
ponant, qui nos pariter ad vitam æternam  
perducat. Amen.

<sup>1</sup> Rom. xii. 10.



## CHAPTER LXXII.

### OF THE GOOD ZEAL WHICH MONKS OUGHT TO HAVE.

AS there is a zeal of bitterness which separateth from God, and leadeth to hell, so there is a good zeal, which separateth from vices and leadeth to God and life everlasting. Let Monks, therefore, exercise this zeal with most fervent love; that is to say, let them "in honour prevent one another."<sup>1</sup> Let them bear patiently with each other's infirmities, whether of body or of mind, and contend with one another in the virtue of obedience. Let no one follow what he thinketh profitable to himself, but rather that which is profitable to another; let them show unto each other all brotherly charity with a chaste love. Let them fear God, love their Abbot with sincere and humble affection, and prefer nothing whatever to Christ, and may He bring us to life everlasting. Amen.



## CAPUT LXXIII.

DE EO QUOD NON OMNIS OBSERVATIO JUSTITIAE  
IN HAC SIT REGULA CONSTITUTA.

<sup>1 Maii.</sup> <sup>31 Aug.</sup> <sup>31 Dec.</sup> REGULAM autem hanc descripsimus, ut  
eam observantes in Monasteriis aliquatenus vel honestatem morum, aut initium conversationis nos demonstramus habere. Cæterum ad perfectionem conversationis qui festinant, sunt doctrinae sanctorum Patrum, quarum observatio perducit hominem ad celsitudinem perfectionis. Quæ enim pagina, aut quis sermo divinæ auctoritatis Veteris ac Novi Testamenti, non est rectissima norma vitæ humanæ? Aut quis liber sanctorum Catholicorum Patrum hoc non resonat, ut recto cursu perveniamus ad Creatorem nostrum? Nec non et Collationes Patrum, et Instituta et Vita eorum; sed et Regula sancti Patris nostri Basilii, quid aliud



## CHAPTER LXXIII.

THAT THE HIGHEST DEGREE OF PERFECTION  
IS NOT CONTAINED IN THIS RULE.

WE have written this Rule, that by its observance in Monasteries we may show that we possess, in some measure, uprightness of manners, or the beginning of a good Religious life. But for such as hasten forward to the perfection of holy living, there are the precepts of the holy Fathers, the observance whereof leadeth a man to the height of perfection. For what page, or what passage is there in the divinely inspired books of the Old and New Testament, that is not a most perfect rule of man's life? Or what book is there of the holy Catholic Fathers that doth not proclaim this; that we may by a direct course reach our Creator? Moreover, what else are the

sunt, nisi bene viventium et obedientium Monachorum exempla, et instrumenta virtutum? Nobis autem desidiosis et male viventibus atque negligentibus, rubor confusionis est.

Quisquis ergo ad patriam cœlestem festinas, hanc minimam inchoationis Regulam descriptam, adjuvante Christo, perface: et tunc demum ad majora, quæ supra commemoravimus, doctrinæ virtutumque culmina, Deo protegente, pervenies.

I.O.G.D.

FINIS.

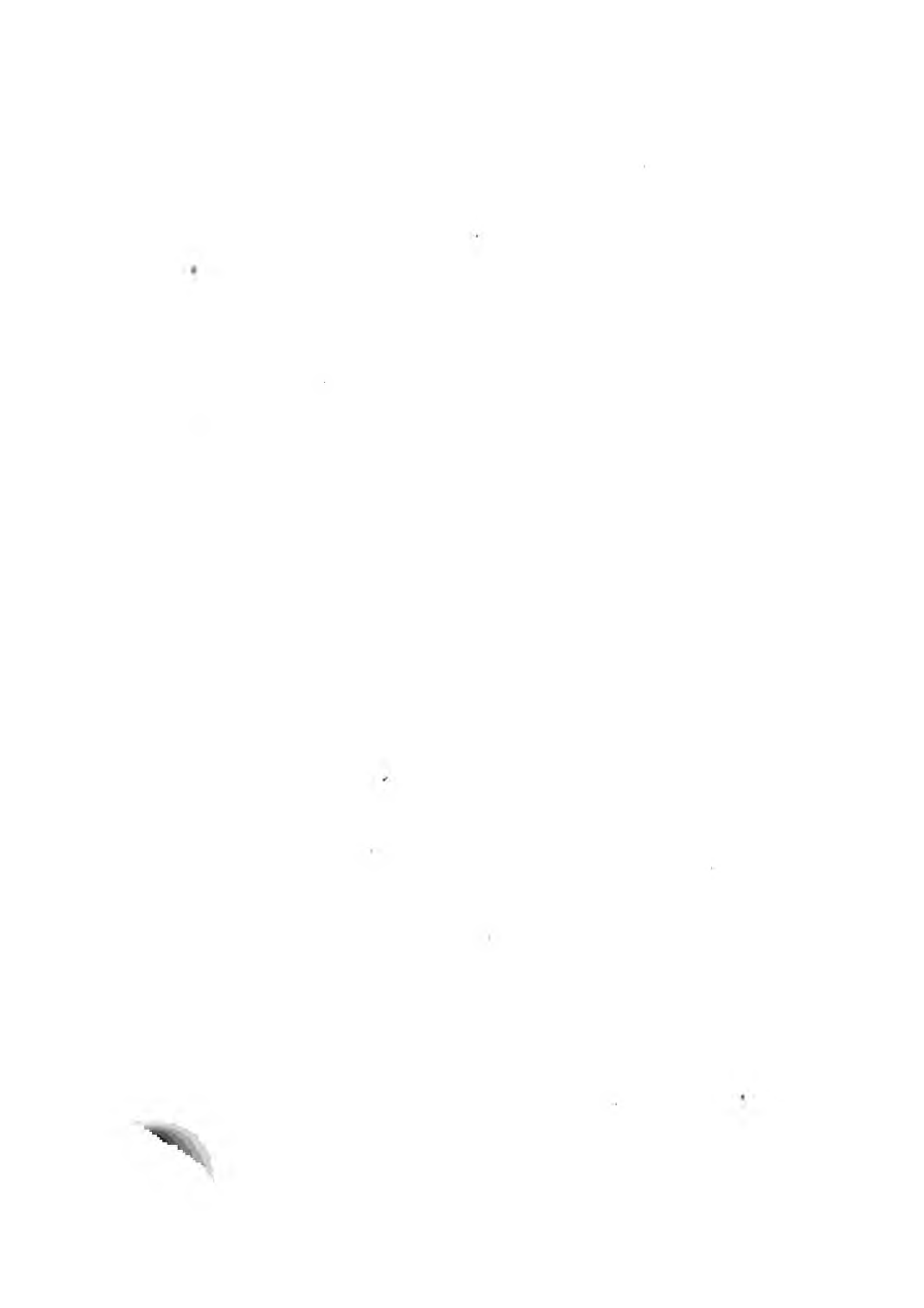


Collations of the Fathers, their Institutes, their Lives, also the Rule of our Holy Father Basil, but examples of the good living and obedience of Monks, and so many instruments of virtue? But to us who are slothful and lead bad and negligent lives, they are matter for shame and confusion.

Therefore whosoever thou art that dost hasten to the heavenly country, first accomplish, by the help of Christ, this little Rule written for beginners; and then at length thou shalt come, under the guidance of God, to those loftier heights of doctrine and of virtue, which we have mentioned above.

I.O.G.D.

THE END.



18 PATERNOSTER

ROW, LONDON.

R. WASHBOURNE'S



CATALOGUE.

JUNE

1875.

- Elevations to the Heart of Jesus. By Rev. Father Doyotte, S. J. Fcap. 8vo. 3s.
- Sir Thomas Maxwell and his Ward. By Miss Bridges. Fcap. 8vo. 2s.
- Scraps from my Scrap Book. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.
- Nano Nagle. By Rev. W. Hutch, D.D. 7s. 6d.
- Thy Gods, O Israel. A Picture in Verse of the Religious Anomalies of our Time. Cr. 8vo. 2s.
- Catherine grown older: a sequel to "Catherine Hamilton." By M. F. S. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.; gilt 3s.
- The Eucharist and the Christian Life. By Mgr. de la Bouillerie. Translated. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.
- Regina Sæculorum, or, Mary venerated in all Ages. Devotions to the Blessed Virgin from ancient sources. Fcap. 8vo. 3s.
- Life of S. John of God, Founder of the Order of Hospitallers. With a Photograph, 5s.
- First Communion Picture. Tastefully printed in gold and colours. Price 1s., or 10s. a dozen, *net*.
- "Just what has long been wanted, a really good picture, with Tablet for First Communion and Confirmation."—*Tablet*.
- Rome and her Captors. Letters collected and edited by Count Henri d'Ideville, and translated by F. R. Wegg-Prosser. Cr. 8vo. 4s.

\* \* *Though this Catalogue does not contain the books of other Publishers, R. W. can supply all of them, no matter by whom they are published.*

The Tradition of the Syriac Church of Antioch, concerning the Primacy and Prerogatives of S. Peter, and of his successors, the Roman Pontiffs. By the Most Rev. C. B. Benni, Syriac Archbishop of Mossul (Nineveh). 8vo. 7s. 6d.

The Supernatural Life. Translated from the French of Mgr. Mermillod, with a Preface by Lady Herbert. Cr. 8vo. 5s.

"Among the Catholic prelates on the Continent, no name stands higher than that of Dr. Mermillod, the exiled Bishop of Geneva, whose eloquence struck so forcibly the English pilgrims at Paray-le-Monial last year. . . The object of these conferences was to stir up the female portion of creation to higher and holier lives, in the hope of so influencing their husbands, their brothers, and other relatives, and so to lend a helping hand to the right side in that struggle which, as Lady Herbert so eloquently and so truly remarks, 'was formerly confined to certain places and certain minds, but is now going on all over the world—the struggle between God and the devil; between faith and unbelief; between those who still revere God's word, and the entire negation of all divine revelation.'"—*Register*.

The Jesuits, and other Essays. By Willis Nevin. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

"If any one wishes to read in brief all that can be said about and in favour of the sons of Ignatius Loyola, by all means let him get this little work, where he will find everything ready 'at his fingers' ends.'"—*Register*. "It displays considerable vigour of thought, and no small literary power. This small book is a work of promise from one who knows both sides of those questions."—*Union Review*.

Catherine Hamilton. By the author of "Tom's Crucifix," &c. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d. ; gilt, 3s.

"A short, simple, and well-told story, illustrative of the power of grace to correct bad temper in a wayward girl. For Catholic parents who are possessed with such children, we know of no better book than 'Catherine Hamilton.'"—*Register*.

Photographs (10), illustrating the history of the Miraculous Hosts, called the Blessed Sacrament of the Miracle. Price 2s. 6d. the set.

On Contemporary Prophecies. By Mgr. Dupanloup. Translated by Rev. Dr. Redmond. 8vo. 1s.

The Child. By Mgr. Dupanloup. Translated, 3s. 6d.

Protestantism and Liberty. By Professor Ozanam. Translated by W. C. Robinson. 8vo. 1s.

Düsseldorf Society for the Distribution of Good, Religious Pictures. R. Washbourne is now Sole Agent for Great Britain and Ireland. Yearly Subscription is 8s. 6d. *Catalogue post free.*

Düsseldorf Gallery. 8vo. half morocco, 31s. 6d. This volume contains 127 Engravings handsomely bound in half morocco, full gilt. Cash 25s.

Düsseldorf Gallery. 4to. half morocco, £5 5s. This superb work contains 331 Pictures. Handsomely bound in half morocco, full gilt.

"We confidently believe that no wealthy Catholic could possibly see the volume which we have examined and admired without ordering 'The Düsseldorf Gallery' for the adornment of his drawing-room table. . . As lovers of art, we rejoice to see what has been done, and we can only desire with all possible heartiness, that such an enterprise as this may meet with the success it deserves."—*Tablet*. "The most beautiful Catholic gift-book that was ever sent forth from the house of a Catholic publisher."—*Register*.

Catholicism, Liberalism, and Socialism. Translated from the Spanish of Donoso Cortes, by Rev. W. M'Donald. 6s.

Replies to Gladstone's "Divine Decrees."

Rome, semper eadem. By Denis Patrick Michael O'Mahony. 1s. 6d.

A Few Remarks. 6d.

**Dramas, Comedies, Farces,**

He would be a Lord. From the French of "Le Bourgeois Gentilhomme." Three Acts. (Boys.) 2s.

St. Louis in Chains. Drama in Five Acts, for boys. 2s.

"Well suited for acting in Catholic schools and colleges."—*Tablet*.

The Expiation. A Drama in Three Acts, for boys. 2s.

"Has its scenes laid in the days of the Crusades."—*Register*.

Shandy Maguire. A Farce for boys in Two Acts. 1s.

The Reverse of the Medal. A Drama in Four Acts, for young ladies. 6d.

Ernscliff Hall: or, Two Days Spent with a Great-Aunt.

A Drama in Three Acts, for young ladies. 6d.

Filiola. A Drama in Four Acts, for young ladies. 6d.

The Convent Martyr, or Callista. By Dr. Newman. Dramatized by Dr. Husenbeth. 1s.



Garden of the Soul. (WASHBOURNE'S EDITION.) *With Imprimatur of the Archbishop of Westminster.* This edition has over all others the following advantages :—1. Complete order in its arrangements. 2. Introduction of Devotions to Saint Joseph, Patron of the Church. 3. Introduction into the English Devotions for Mass to a very great extent of the Prayers from the Missal. 4. The Full Form of Administration of all the Sacraments publicly administered in Church. 5. The insertion of Indulgences above Indulged Prayers. 6. Its large size of type. Embossed, 1s. ; with rims, 1s. 6d. ; with Epistles and Gospels, 1s. 6d. ; with rims, 2s. French morocco, 2s. ; with rims, 2s. 6d. ; with E. and G., 2s. 6d. ; with rims, 3s. French morocco extra gilt, 2s. 6d. ; with rims, 3s. ; with E. and G., 3s. ; with rims, 3s. 6d. Calf or morocco, 4s. ; with rims, 5s. 6d. ; with E. and G., 4s. 6d. ; with rims, 6s. Calf or morocco extra, 5s. ; with rims, 6s. 6d. ; with E. and G., 5s. 6d. ; with rims, 7s. Velvet, with rims, 8s., 10s. 6d., and 13s. ; with E. and G., 8s. 6d., 11s., and 13s. 6d. Russia, antique, with clasps, 12s. 6d. ; with E. and G., 13s. Ivory, 15s., 21s., 25s., and 30s. ; with E. and G., 15s. 6d., 21s. 6d., 25s. 6d., and 30s. 6d. Antique bindings, with corners and clasps: morocco, 28s., with E. and G., 28s. 6d. ; russia, 30s., with E. and G., 30s. 6d.

"This is one of the best editions we have seen of one of the best of all our Prayer-books. It is well printed in clear large type, on good paper."—*Catholic Opinion.* "A very complete arrangement of this which is emphatically the Prayer-book of every Catholic household. It is as cheap as it is good, and we heartily recommend it."—*Universe.* "Two striking features are the admirable order displayed throughout the book and the insertion of the Indulgences, in small type above Indulged Prayers."—*Weekly Register.*

The Epistles and Gospels in cloth, 6d., roan, 1s. 6d.

---

*R. Washbourne, 18 Paternoster Row, London.*

The Little Garden. Cloth, 6d., with rims, 1s. ; embossed, 9d., with rims, 1s. 3d. ; roan, 1s., with rims, 1s. 6d. ; french morocco, 1s. 6d., with rims, 2s. ; french morocco, extra gilt, 2s., with rims, 2s. 6d. ; imitation ivory, with rims, 3s. ; calf or morocco, 3s., with rims, 4s. ; calf or morocco, extra gilt, 4s., with rims, 5s. ; velvet, with rims, 5s., 8s. 6d., 1cs. 6d. ; russia, with clasp, 8s. ; ivory, with rims, 10s. 6d., 13s., 15s., 17s. 6d. ; antique binding, with clasps : morocco, 17s. 6d., russia, 20s. ; with oxydized silver or gilt mountings, in morocco case, 30s.

A Few Words from Lady Mildred's Housekeeper. 2d.

"If any of our lady readers wish to give to their servants some hint; as to the necessity of laying up some part of their wages instead of spending their money in dressing above their station, let them get 'A Few Words from Lady Mildred's Housekeeper,' and present it for the use of the servants' hall or downstairs departments. The good advice of an experienced upper servant on such subjects ought not to fall on unwilling ears."—*Register*.

### Religious Reading.

"Vitis Mystica;" or, the True Vine. A Treatise on the Passion of Our Lord. Translated, with Preface, by the Rev. W. R. Bernard Brownlow. With Frontispiece. 18mo. 4s., red edges, 4s. 6d.

"It is a pity that such a beautiful treatise should for so many centuries have remained untranslated into our tongue."—*Tablet*. "It will be found very acceptable spiritual food."—*Church Herald*. "We heartily recommend it for its unction and deep sense of the beauties of nature."—*The Month*. "Full of deep spiritual lore."—*Register*. "Every chapter of this little volume affords abundant matter for meditation."—*Universe*. "An excellent translation of beautiful treatise."—*Dublin Review*.

Ebba; or, the Supernatural Power of the Blessed Sacrament. In French. 12mo. 1s. 6d. ; cloth gilt, 2s. 6d.

"The author has caught very well many of the difficulties which bar the way to the Church in this country... We may venture to hope that the work will also bear fruit on the Continent."—*The Month*. "There are thoughts in the work which we value highly."—*Dublin Review*. "It is a clever and trenchant work. . . . Written in a lively and piquant style."—*Register*. "The tone of the book is kind and fervent."—*Church Herald*. "The book is exceedingly well written, and will do good to all who read it."—*Universe*.

---

R. Washbourne, 18 Paternoster Row, London.



Holy Places ; their Sanctity and Authenticity. By the Rev. Fr. Philpin. With Maps. Crown 8vo. 6s.

"It displays an amount of patient research not often to be met with."—*Universe*. "Dean Stanley and other sinners in controversy are treated with great gentleness. They are indeed thoroughly exposed and refuted."—*Register*. "Fr. Philpin has a particularly nervous and fresh style of handling his subject, with an occasional picturesqueness of epithet or simile."—*Tablet*. "We do not question his learning and industry, and yet we cannot think them to have been uselessly expended on this work."—*Spectator*. ". . . Fr. Philpin there weighs the comparative value of extraordinary, ordinary, and natural evidence, and gives an admirable summary of the witness of the early centuries regarding the holy places of Jerusalem, with archæological and architectural proofs. It is a complete treatise of the subject."—*The Month*. "The author treats his subject with a thorough system, and a competent knowledge. It is a book of singular attractiveness and considerable merit."—*Church Herald*. "Fr. Philpin's very interesting book appears most opportunely, and at a time when pilgrimages have been revived."—*Dublin Review*.

The Consoler ; or, Pious Readings addressed to the Sick and to all who are afflicted. By the Rev. P. J. Lambilotte, S.J. Translated by the Right Rev. Abbot Burder, O. Cist. Fcp. 8vo. 4s. 6d., red edges, 5s.

☞ "As 'The Consoler' has the merit of being written in plain and simple language, and while deeply spiritual contains no higher flights into the regions of mysticism where poor and ignorant readers would be unable to follow, it is very specially adapted for one of the subjects which its writer had in view, namely, its introduction into hospitals."—*Tablet*. "A work replete with wise comfort for every affliction."—*Universe*. "A spiritual treatise of great beauty and value."—*Church Herald*.

The Souls in Purgatory. Translated from the French, by the Right Rev. Abbot Burder, O. Cist. 32mo. 3d.

"It will be found most useful as an aid to the cultivation of this especial devotion."—*Register*.

Flowers of Christian Wisdom. By Lucien Henry. With a Preface by the Right Hon. Lady Herbert of Lea. 18mo. 2s. ; red edges, 2s. 6d.

"A compilation of some of the most beautiful thoughts and passages in the works of the Fathers, the great schoolmen, and eminent modern Churchmen, and will probably secure a good circulation."—*Church Times*. "It is a compilation of gems of thought, carefully selected."—*Tablet*. "It is a small but exquisite bouquet, like that which S. Francis of Sales has prepared for *Philothea*."—*Universe*.

- Apostleship of Prayer. By Rev. H. Ramière. 6s.  
The Happiness of Heaven. By a Father of the  
Society of Jesus. Fcap. 8vo. 4s.  
God our Father. By the same Author. Fcap. 8vo. 4s.  
The Light of the Holy Spirit in the World. By the  
Rev. Canon Hedley, O.S.B. 1s.; cloth, 1s. 6d.  
A General History of the Catholic Church : from the  
commencement of the Christian Era until the  
present time. By the Abbé Darras. 4 vols.,  
large 8vo. cloth, 48s.  
The Book of Perpetual Adoration ; or, the Love of  
Jesus in the most Holy Sacrament of the Altar.  
By Mgr. Boudon. Edited by the Rev. J. Red-  
man, D.D. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. ; red edges, 3s. 6d.

"This new translation is one of Boudon's most beautiful works,  
. . . and merits that welcome in no ordinary degree."—*Tablet*. "The  
devotions at the end will be very acceptable aids in visiting the  
Blessed Sacrament, and there are two excellent methods for assisting  
at Mass."—*The Month*. "It has been pronounced by a learned  
and pious French priest to be 'the most beautiful of all books  
written in honour of the Blessed Sacrament.'"—*The Nation*.

Spiritual Works of Louis of Blois, Abbot of Liesse.  
Edited by the Rev. John Edward Bowden, of the  
Oratory. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d ; red edges, 4s.

"No more important or welcome addition could have been made  
to our English ascetical literature than this little book. It is a model  
of good translation."—*Dublin Review*. "This handy little volume  
will certainly become a favourite."—*Tablet*. "Elegant and flow-  
ing."—*Register*. "Most useful of meditations."—*Catholic Opinion*.

Heaven Opened by the Practice of Frequent Confes-  
sion and Communion. By the Abbé Favre.  
Translated from the French, carefully revised by  
a Father of the Society of Jesus. Third Edition.  
Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d. ; red edges, 4s. Cheap edit. 2s.

"This beautiful little book of devotion. We may recommend it  
to the clergy as well as to the laity."—*Tablet*. "It is filled with  
quotations from the Holy Scriptures, the Fathers, and the Councils  
of the Church, and thus will be found of mater al assistance to  
the clergy, as a storehouse of doctrinal and ascetical authorities on  
the two great sacraments of Holy Eucharist and Penance."—  
*Register*.

The Spiritual Life. — Conferences delivered to the *Enfants de Marie* by Père Ravignan. Cr. 8vo. 5s.

"Père Ravignan's words are as applicable to the ladies of London as to those of Paris. They could not have a better book for their spiritual reading."—*Tablet*. "A depth of eloquence and power of exhortation which few living preachers can rival."—*Church Review*.

Lenten Thoughts. Drawn from the Gospel for each day in Lent. By the Bishop of Northampton. 1s. 6d. ; stronger bound, 2s. ; red edges, 2s. 6d.

"A beautiful little volume of Meditations."—*Universe*. "Will be found a useful manual."—*Tablet*. "An admirable little book."—*Nation*. "Clear and practical."—*The Month*. "A very beautiful and simple little book."—*Church Herald*.

Holy Communion: it is my Life. By H. Lebon. 4s.

Contemplations on the Most Holy Sacrament of the Altar, drawn from the Sacred Scriptures. 18mo. cloth, 2s. ; cloth extra, red edges, 2s. 6d.

"This is a welcome addition to our books of Scriptural devotion. It contains thirty-four excellent subjects of reflection before the Blessed Sacrament, or for making a spiritual visit to the Blessed Sacrament at home; for the use of the sick."—*Dublin Review*.

Good Thoughts for Priests and People; or Short Meditations for Every Day in the Year. By Rev. T. Noethen. 12mo. 8s.

One Hundred Pious Reflections. Extracted from Alban Butler's "Lives of the Saints." 18mo. cloth, red edges, 2s. ; cheap edition, 1s.

"A happy idea. The author of 'The Lives of the Saints' had a way of breathing into his language the unction and force which carries the truth of the Gospel into the heart."—*Letter to the Editor from THE RIGHT REV. DR. ULLATHORNE, BISHOP OF BIRMINGHAM*. "Well selected, sufficiently short, and printed in good bold type."—*Tablet*. "Good, sound, practical."—*Church Herald*.

The Imitation of Christ. With reflections. 32mo. 1s. Persian calf, 3s. 6d. Also an Edition with ornamental borders. Fcap. cloth, red edges, 3s. 6d.

Following of Christ. Small pocket edition, 1s. cloth; 1s. 6d. embossed; roan, 2s; French morocco, 2s. 6d.; calf or morocco, 4s. 6d.; calf or morocco extra gilt, 5s. 6d.; ivory, 15s. and 16s.; morocco, antique, 17s. 6d.; russia antique, 20s.



Conversion of the Teutonic Race. By Mrs. Hope, author of "Early Martyrs." Edited by the Rev. Father Dalgairns. 2 vols. crown 8vo. 12s.

I. Conversion of the Franks and the English, 6s.

II. S. Boniface and the Conversion of Germany, 6s.

"It is good in itself, possessing considerable literary merit; it forms one of the few Catholic books brought out in this country which are not translations or adaptations."—*Dublin Review*. "It is a great thing to find a writer of a book of this class so clearly grasping, and so boldly setting forth truths, which, familiar as they are to scholars, are still utterly unknown by most of the writers of our smaller literature."—*Saturday Review*. "A very valuable work . . . Mrs. Hope has compiled an original history, which gives constant evidence of great erudition, and sound historical judgment."—*Month*. "This is a most taking book: it is solid history and romance in one."—*Catholic Opinion*. "It is carefully, and in many parts beautifully written."—*Universe*.

Cistercian Order: its Mission and Spirit. Comprising the Life of S. Robert of Newminster, and the Life of S. Robert of Knaresborough. By the author of "Cistercian Legends." Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

Cistercian Legends of the 13th Century. Translated from the Latin by the Rev. Henry Collins. 3s.

"Interesting records of Cistercian sanctity and cloistral experience."—*Dublin Review*. "A casquet of jewels."—*Weekly Register*. "Most beautiful legends, full of deep spiritual reading."—*Tablet*. "Well translated, and beautifully got up."—*Month*. "A compilation of anecdotes, full of heavenly wisdom."—*Catholic Opinion*.

The Directorium Asceticum; or Guide to the Spiritual Life. By Scaramelli. Translated and edited at St. Beuno's College. 4 vols. crown 8vo. 24s.

Maxims of the Kingdom of Heaven. New and enlarged Edition. 5s.; red edges, 5s. 6d.; calf or morocco, 10s. 6d.

"The selections on every subject are numerous, and the order and arrangement of the chapters will greatly facilitate meditation and reference."—*Freeman's Journal*. "We are glad to see that this admirable devotional work, of which we have before spoken in warm praise, has reached a second issue."—*Weekly Register*. "It has an Introduction by J. H. N., and bears the Imprimatur of the Archbishop of Westminster. We need say no more in its praise."—*Tablet*. "A most beautiful little book."—*Catholic Opinion*. "This priceless volume."—*Universe*. "Most suitable for meditation and reference."—*Dublin Review*.

The Oxford Undergraduate of Twenty Years Ago: his Religion, his Studies, his Antics. By a Bachelor of Arts. [Author of "The Comedy of Convocation."] 2s. 6d. ; cloth, 3s. 6d.

"The writing is full of brilliancy and point."—*Tablet*. "Time has not dimmed the author's recollection, and has no doubt served to sharpen his sense of undergraduate humour and his reading of undergraduate character."—*Examiner*. "It will deservedly attract attention, not only by the briskness and liveliness of its style, but also by the accuracy of the picture which it probably gives of an individual experience."—*The Month*. "Whoever takes this book in hand will read it through and through with the keenest pleasure and with great benefit."—*Universe*.

The Infallibility of the Pope. A Lecture. By the same Author. 8vo. 1s.

"A splendid lecture, by one who thoroughly understands his subject, and in addition is possessed of a rare power of language in which to put before others what he himself knows so well."—*Universe*. "There are few writers so well able to make things plain and intelligible as the author of 'The Comedy of Convocation.' . . . The lecture is a model of argument and style."—*Register*.

Comedy of Convocation in the English Church.

Edited by Archdeacon Chasuble, D.D. 2s. 6d.

Reply to the Bishop of Ripon's Attack on the Catholic Church. By the same Author. 6d.

The Harmony of Anglicanism. Report of a Conference on Church Defence. [By T. W. M. Marshall, Esq.] 8vo. 2s. 6d.

"'Church Defence' is characterized by the same caustic irony, the same good-natured satire, the same logical acuteness which distinguished its predecessor, the 'Comedy of Convocation.' . . . A more scathing bit of irony we have seldom met with."—*Tablet*. "Clever, humorous, witty, learned, written by a keen but sarcastic observer of the Establishment, it is calculated to make defenders wince as much as it is to make all others smile."—*Nonconformist*.

The Roman Question. By Dr. Husenbeth. 1s.

Consoling Thoughts of St. Francis de Sales. By Père Huguet. 18mo., 2s.

Holy Readings. Short Selections from well-known Authors. By J. R. Digby Beste, Esq. 32mo. cloth, 2s. ; cloth, red edges, 2s. 6d. ; roan, 3s. morocco, 6s. [See "Catholic Hours," p. 23.]

St. Peter; his Name and his Office as set forth in Holy Scripture. By T. W. Allies. *Second Edition*. Revised. Crown 8vo. 5s.

"A standard work. There is no single book in English, on the Catholic side, which contains the Scriptural argument about St. Peter and the Papacy so clearly or conclusively put."—*Month*. "An admirable volume."—*The Universe*. "This valuable work."—*Weekly Register*. "A second edition, with a new and very touching preface."—*Dublin Review*.

The Life of Pleasure. Translated from the French of Mgr. Dechamps. Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.

Sure Way to Heaven: a little Manual for Confession and Holy Communion. 32mo. cloth, 6d. Persian 2s. 6d. Calf or morocco, 3s. 6d.

Compendium of the History of the Catholic Church. By Rev. T. Noethen. 12mo. 8s.

History of the Catholic Church, for schools. By Rev. T. Noethen. 12mo. 5s. 6d.

Anti-Janus. Translated from the German of Dr. Hergenröther, by Professor Robertson. 4s.

Benedictine Almanack. Yearly. Price 1d.

Catholic Calendar and Guide to the Services of the Church. Yearly. Price 4d. and 6d.

Catholic Directory for Scotland. Yearly. 1s.

Dr. Pusey's Eirenicon considered in Relation to Catholic Unity. By H. N. Oxenham. 2s. 6d.

Sancti Alphonsi Doctoris Officium Parvum—Novena and Little Office in honour of St. Alphonsus. Fcap. 8vo. 1s.; cloth, 2s.; cloth extra, 3s.

Familiar Instructions on Christian Truths. By a Priest. No. 1, Detraction. 4d. No. 2, The Dignity of the Priesthood. 3d. No. 3, Necessity of hearing the Word of God. Why it produces no fruit, and how to be heard. On the necessity of Faith. 3d.

Sweetness of Holy Living; or Honey culled from the Flower Garden of S. Francis of Sales. 1s. French morocco, 3s.

"In it will be found some excellent aids to devotion and meditation."—*Weekly Register*.

Commonitory of S. Vincent of Lerins. 12mo. 1s. 3d.  
 Men and Women of the English Reformation, from  
 the days of Wolsey to the death of Cranmer. By  
 S. H. Burke, M.A. 2 vols. 13s. Vol. ii., 6s. 6d.

"It contains a great amount of curious and useful information, gathered together with evident care."—*Dublin Review*. "Interesting and valuable."—*Tablet*. "It is, in truth, the only dispassionate record of a much contested epoch we have ever read."—*Cosmopolitan*. "It is so forcibly, but truthfully written, that it should be in the hands of every seeker after truth."—*Catholic Opinion*.—"On all hands admitted to be one of the most valuable historical works ever published."—*Nation*. "The author produces evidence that cannot be gainsayed."—*Universe*. "Full of interest, and very temperately written."—*Church Review*. "Able, fairly impartial, and likely to be of considerable value to the student of history. Replete with information."—*Church Times*. "The book supplies many hitherto unknown facts of the times of which it is a history."—*Church Opinion*. "A clever and well-written historical statement of facts concerning the chief actors of our so-called Reformation."—*The Month*.

Père Lacordaire's Conferences. God, 6s. Jesus Christ,  
 6s. God and Man, 6s.

A Devout Paraphrase on the Seven Penitential Psalms ;  
 or, a Practical Guide to Repentance. By the  
 Rev. Fr. Blyth. To which is added :—Necessity  
 of Purifying the Soul, by St. Francis of Sales.  
 18mo., 1s. 6d. ; red edges, 2s. ; cheap edition, 1s.

"A new edition of a book well known to our grandfathers. The work is full of devotion and of the spirit of prayer."—*Universe*. "A very excellent work, and ought to be in the hands of every Catholic."—*Waterford News*.

A New Miracle at Rome ; through the Intercession of  
 Blessed John Berchmans. 2d.

Cure of Blindness ; through the Intercession of Our  
 Lady and St. Ignatius. 2d.

BY THE POOR CLARES OF KENMARE.

Woman's Work in Modern Society. 7s. 6d.

A Nun's Advice to her Girls. 2s. 6d.

Daily Steps to Heaven. Fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

Book of the Blessed Ones. 4s. 6d.

Jesus and Jerusalem ; or, the Way Home. 4s. 6d.

The Spouse of Christ. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

The Ecclesiastical Year. Fcap. 4s. 6d. ; calf, 6s. 6d.

---

*R. Washbourne, 18 Paternoster Row, London.*



- 
- Sermons, Lectures, &c. By Rev. M. B. Buckley. 6s.  
A Homely Discourse ; Mary Magdalen. Cr. 8vo. 6d.  
Extemporaneous Speaking. By Rev. T. J. Potter. 5s.  
Pastor and People. By Rev. T. J. Potter. 6s.  
Eight Short Sermon Essays. By Dr. Redmond. 1s.  
One Hundred Short Sermons. By Rev. H. T. Thomas. 8vo. 12s.  
Catholic Sermons. By Father Burke, and others. 2s.  
Non Possumus ; or, the Temporal Sovereignty of the Popes. By the Rev. Father Lockhart. 1s.  
Secession or Schism. By Fr. Lockhart. 6d.  
Who is the Anti-Christ of Prophecy? By the Rev. Fr. Lockhart. 1s.  
The Communion of Saints. By the Rev. Father Lockhart. 1s. ; cloth, 1s. 6d.  
The Church of England and its Defenders. By the Rev. W. R. Bernard Brownlow. 8vo. 1st Letter, 6d. ; 2nd Letter, 1s.  
Lyrics of Light and Life. XLIII original poems, by Dr. Newman and others. 5s.  
Lectures on the Life, Writings, and Times of Edmund Burke. By Professor Robertson. 5s.  
Professor Robertson's Lectures on Modern History and Biography. Crown 8vo. cloth, 6s.  
The Knight of the Faith. By the Rev. Dr. Laing.  
1. A Favourite Fallacy about Private Judgment. 1d.  
2. Catholic not Roman Catholic. 4d.  
3. Rationale of the Mass. 1s.  
4. Challenge to the Churches of England, Scotland, and all Protestant Denominations. 1d.  
5. Absurd Protestant Opinions concerning *Intention*, and Spelling Book of Christian Philosophy. 4d.  
6. Whence the Monarch's right to rule. 2s. 6d.  
7. Protestantism against the Natural Moral Law. 1d.  
8. What is Christianity? 6d.  
Abridged Explanation of the Medal or Cross of S. Benedict. 1d.
-

- Diary of a Confessor of the Faith. 12mo. 1s.  
 Sursum, 1s. Homeward, 2s. Both by Rev. Fr. Rawes.  
 Sermon at the Month's Mind of the Most Rev. Dr.  
 Spalding, Archbishop of Baltimore. 1s.  
 Commentary on the Psalms. By Bellarmin. 4to. 4s.  
 Monastic Legends. By E. G. K. Browne. 8vo. 6d.  
 BY DR. MANNING, ARCHBISHOP OF WESTMINSTER.  
 The Convocation in Crown and Council. 6d. net.  
 Confidence in God. Fcap. 1s. ; cloth, 1s. 6d.  
 Temporal Sovereignty of the Popes. 1s. ; cloth, 1s. 6d.  
 The Church, the Spirit, and the Word. 6d.  
 BY THE PASSIONIST FATHERS.  
 The School of Jesus Crucified. 3s. 6d. ; morocco, 5s.  
 The Manual of the Cross and Passion. 32mo. 2s. 6d.  
 The Manual of the Seven Dolours. 32mo. 1s. 6d.  
 The Christian Armed. 32mo. 1s. 6d. ; mor. 3s. 6d.  
 Guide to Sacred Eloquence. 2s.

### Religious Instruction.

- The Catechism, Illustrated with Passages from the  
 Holy Scriptures. Arranged by the Rev. J. B.  
 Bagshawe, with Imprimatur. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.  
 "I believe the Catechism to be one of the best possible books of  
 controversy, to those, at least, who are inquiring with a real desire  
 to find the truth."—*Extract from the Preface.*  
 "An excellent idea. The very thing of all others that is needed  
 by many under instruction."—*Tablet.* "It is a book which will  
 do incalculable good. Our priests will hail with pleasure so valu-  
 able a help to their weekly instructions in the Catechism, while in  
 schools its value will be equally recognized."—*Weekly Register.*  
 "A work of great merit."—*Church Herald.* "We can hardly wish  
 for anything better, either in intention or in performance."—*The*  
*Month.* "Very valuable."—*Dublin Review.*  
 A Dogmatic Catechism. By Frassinetti. Translated  
 from the original Italian by the Oblate Fathers  
 of St. Charles. With a Preface by His Grace  
 the Archbishop of Westminster. Fcap. 8vo. 3s.  
 "We give a few extracts from Frassinetti's work, as samples of  
 its excellent execution."—*Dublin Review.* "Needs no commenda-  
 tion."—*Month.* "It will be found useful, not only to catechists, but  
 also for the instruction of converts from the middle class of society."  
 —*Tablet.*

*R. Washbourn, 18 Paternoster Row, London,*

The Threshold of the Catholic Church. A course of Plain Instructions for those entering her Communion. By Rev. J. B. Bagshawe. Cr. 8vo. 4s.

"A scholarly, well-written book, full of information."—*Church Herald*. "An admirable book, which will be of infinite service to thousands."—*Universe*. "Plain, practical, and unpretentious, it exhausts so entirely the various subjects of instruction necessary for our converts, that few missionary priests will care to dispense with its assistance."—*Register*. "It has very special merits of its own. . . It is the work, not only of a thoughtful writer and good theologian, but of a wise and experienced priest."—*Dublin Review*. "Its characteristic is the singular simplicity and clearness with which everything is explained. . . It will save priests hours and days of time."—*Tablet*. "There is much in it with which we thoroughly agree."—*Church Times*. "There was a great want of a manual of instruction for convents, and the want has now been supplied, and in the most satisfactory manner."—*The Month*.

The Catechism of Christian Doctrine. Approved for the use of the Faithful in all the Dioceses of England and Wales. Price 1d.; cloth, 2d.

A First Sequel to the Catechism. By the Rev. J. Nary. 32mo. 1d.

"It will recommend itself to teachers in Catholic schools as one peculiarly adapted to the use of such children as have mastered the Catechism, and yet have nothing else to fall back upon for higher religious instruction. It will be found a great assistance as well to teachers as to pupils who belong to the higher standards in our Catholic poor schools."—*Weekly Register*.

Catechism made Easy. A Familiar Explanation of "The Catechism of Christian Doctrine." By Rev. H. Gibson. Vol. I., 4s. Vol. II., 4s.

The Seven Sacraments explained and defended. Edited by a Catholic Clergyman. 1s. 6d.

Burton's Ecclesiastical History. 1s.

Protestant Principles Examined by the Written Word. Originally entitled, "The Protestant's Trial by the Written Word." *New edition*. 18mo. 1s.

"An excellent book."—*Church News*. "A good specimen of the concise controversial writing of English Catholics in the early part of the seventeenth century."—*Catholic Opinion*. "A little book which might be consulted profitably by any Catholic."—*Church Times*. "A clever little manual."—*Westminster Gazette*. "A useful little volume."—*The Month*. "An excellent little book."—*Weekly Register*. "A well-written and well-argued treatise."—*Tablet*.

Descriptive Guide to the Mass. By the Rev. Dr. Laing. 1s. ; extra cloth, 1s. 6d.

"An attempt to exhibit the structure of the Mass. The logical relation of parts is ingeniously effected by an elaborate employment of differences of type, so that the classification, down to the minutest subdivision, may at once be caught by the eye."—*Tablet*.

The Necessity of Enquiry as to Religion. By Henry John Pye, M.A. 4d. ; for distribution, 2os. a hundred ; cloth, 6d.

"Mr. Pye is particularly plain and straightforward."—*Tablet*.  
 "It is calculated to do much good. We recommend it to the clergy, and think it a most useful work to place in the hands of all who are under instruction."—*Westminster Gazette*. "A thoroughly searching little pamphlet."—*Universe*. "A clever little pamphlet. Each point is treated briefly and clearly."—*Catholic Opinion*.

A General Catechism of the Christian Doctrine. By the Right Rev. Dr. Poirier. 18mo. 9d.

The Grounds of Catholic Doctrine. By Dr. Chaloner. Large type edition. 18mo. cloth, 4d.

Dr. Butler's *First* Catechism,  $\frac{1}{2}$ d. *Second* Catechism, 1d. ; *Third* Catechism,  $1\frac{1}{2}$ d.

Dr. Doyle's Catechism,  $1\frac{1}{2}$ d.

Lessons on the Christian Doctrine, 1d.

Fleury's Historical Catechism. Large edition,  $1\frac{1}{2}$ d.

Bible History for the use of Catholic Schools and Families. By the Rev. R. Gilmour. 2s.

Herder's Prints—Old and New Testament. 40 large coloured pictures. 12s.

Origin and Progress of Religious Orders, and Happiness of a Religious State. By Fr. Jerome Platus, S.J. ; translated by Patrick Mannock. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

"The whole work is evidently calculated to impress any reader with the great advantages attached to a religious life."—*Register*.

Children of Mary in the World. 32mo. 1d.

The Christian Teacher. By Ven. de la Salle. 1s. 8d.

Christian Politeness. By the Ven. de la Salle. 1s.

Duties of a Christian. By the Ven. de la Salle. 2s.

The Monks of Iona and the Duke of Argyll. By the Rev. J. Stewart M'Corry, D.D. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

---

*R. Washbourn, 18 Paternoster Row, London.*



The Young Catholic's Guide to Confession and Holy Communion. By Dr. Kenny. *Third edition.*

Paper, 4d. ; cloth, 6d. ; cloth, red edges, 9d.

"Admirably suited to the purpose for which it is intended."—*Weekly Register.* "One of the best we have seen. The instructions are clear, pointed, and devout, and the prayers simple, well constructed, and sufficiently brief. We recommend it."—*Church News.*

Practical Counsels for Holy Communion. By Mgr. de Ségur. Translated for children, 9d.

Practical Counsels on Confession. By Mgr. de Ségur. Translated for children. 6d.

Instructions for the Sacrament of Confirmation. 6d.

Auricular Confession. By Rev. Dr. Melia. 1s. 6d.

Explanation of the Epistles and Gospels, &c. By the Rev. Fr. Goffine. Illustrated. 7s.

Rules for a Christian Life. By S. Charles Borromeo. 2d.

Anglican Orders. By the Very Rev. Canon Williams. *Second Edition.* Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

The Rainy Day, and Guild of Our Lady. By the Rev. Fr. Richardson. 2d.

Little by Little ; or, the Penny Bank. By the Rev. Fr. Richardson. 1d.

The Crusade, or Catholic Association for the Suppression of Drunkenness. By the same. 1d.

#### Lives of Saints, &c.

Life of the Ven. Anna Maria Taigi. Translated from the French of Calixte, by A. V. Smith Sligo. 8vo. 5s.

"A most valuable book."—*Dublin Review.* "An edifying and delightful book of spiritual reading."—*Church Herald.* "We hope to see it meet with that success which works of the sort have a right to expect."—*Westminster Gazette.* "The translator's labour has been so ably performed that the book is wanting in few of the merits of an original work."—*Tablet.*

Butler's Lives of the Saints. 2 vols., 8vo., cloth, 28s. ; or in cloth gilt, 34s. ; or in 4 vols., 8vo., cloth, 32s. ; or in cloth gilt, 48s. ; or in leather gilt, 64s.

Life, Passion, Death, and Resurrection of Our Blessed Lord. Translated from Ribadeneira. 1s.

**Oratorian Lives of the Saints. Second Series. Post 8vo.**

Vol. I. S. Bernardine of Siena. 5s.

Vol. II.—S. Philip Benizi. 5s.

Vol. III.—S. Veronica Giuliani, and Blessed Battista Varani. 5s.

Vol. IV.—S. John of God. 5s.

† The works translated from will be in most cases the Lives drawn up *for* or *from* the processes of canonization or beatification, as being more full, more authentic, and more replete with anecdote, thus enabling the reader to become better acquainted with the Saint's disposition and spirit; while the simple matter-of-fact style of the narrative is, from its unobtrusive character, more adapted for spiritual reading than the views and generalizations, and prologetic extenuations of more recent biographers. The work is published with the permission and approval of superiors. Every volume containing the Life of a person not yet canonized or beatified by the Church will be prefaced by a protest in conformity with the decree of Urban VIII., and in all Lives which introduce questions of mystical theology great care will be taken to publish nothing which has not had adequate sanction, or without the reader being informed of the nature and amount of the sanction. Each volume is embellished with a Portrait of the Saint.

Life of Sister Mary Cherubina Clare of S. Francis, Translated from the Italian, with Preface by Lady Herbert. Cr. 8vo. with Photograph, 3s. 6d.

Stories of the Saints. By M. F. S., author of "Tom's Crucifix, and other Tales," "Catherine Hamilton," &c. Fcap. 8vo. 2 vols., each 3s. 6d., gilt, 4s. 6d.

Life of B. Giovanni Colombini. By Feo Belcari. Translated from the editions of 1541 and 1832. with a Photograph. Cr. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

Sketch of the Life and Letters of the Countess Adelman. By E. A. M., author of "Rosalie, or the Memoirs of a French Child," "Life of Paul Seigneret, &c." 2s. 6d.

**DR. NEWMAN'S LIVES OF THE ENGLISH SAINTS.**

Life of St. Augustine of Canterbury. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

Life of St. German. 12mo. cloth, 3s. 6d.

Life of Stephen Langton. 12mo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

---

*R. Washbourne, 18 Paternoster Row, London.*

Life of St. Boniface, and the Conversion of Germany.  
By Mrs. Hope. Edited, with a Preface, by the  
Rev. Father Dalgairns. Cr. 8vo. 6s.

"Every one knows the story of S. Boniface's martyrdom, but every one has not heard it so stirringly set forth as in her 22nd chapter by Mrs. Hope."—*Dublin Review*.

Louise Lateau: her Life, Stigmata, and Ecstasies. By  
Dr. Lefebvre. Translated from the French by T. S.  
Shepard. Fcap. 8vo. 2s.

Venerable Mary Christina of Savoy. 6d.

Memoirs of a Guardian Angel. Fcap. 8vo. 4s.

Life of St. Patrick. 12mo. 1s.

Life of St. Bridget, and of other Saints of Ireland. 1s.

Insula Sanctorum: the Island of Saints. 1s.; cloth, 2s.

Life of Paul Seigneret, Seminarist of Saint-Sulpice.  
Fcap. 8vo., 1s.; cloth extra, 1s. 6d.; gilt, 2s.

"An affecting and well-told narrative. . . It will be a great favourite, especially with our pure-minded, high-spirited young people."

—*Universe*. "Paul Seigneret was remarkable for the simplicity and the heroism of both his natural and his religious character."—*Tablet*.

"We commend it to parents with sons under their care, and especially do we recommend it to those who are charged with the education and training of our Catholic youth."—*Register*.

A Daughter of St. Dominic. By Grace Ramsay.  
Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.; cloth extra, 2s.

"A beautiful little work. The narrative is highly interesting."—*Dublin Review*.

"It is full of courage and faith and Catholic heroism."—*Universe*. "One who has lived and died in our own day, who led the common life of every one else, but yet who learned how to supernaturalize this life in so extraordinary a way that we forget 'the doctor's daughter in a provincial town,' while reading Grace Ramsay's beautiful picture of the wonders effected by her ubiquitous charity, and still more by her fervent prayer."—*Tablet*.

"The spirit of thorough devotion to Rome manifest in every page of this charming work will render it most attractive to Leaguers of St. Sebastian."—*The Crusader*.

The Glory of St. Vincent de Paul. By the Most Rev.  
Dr. Manning, Archbishop of Westminster. 1s.

Life of S. Edmund of Canterbury. From the French  
of the Rev. Father Massé, S. J. By George  
White. Cloth, 1s. ad

Life of Dr. Grant, first Bishop of Southwark. By  
Grace Ramsay. 8vo. 16s.



The Life of St. Francis of Assisi. Translated from the Italian of St. Bonaventure by Miss Lockhart. With a Preface by His Grace the Archbishop of Westminster. Fcap. 8vo. cloth, 2s. and 3s.; gilt, 4s.

"It is beautifully translated."—*Catholic Opinion*. "A most interesting and instructive volume."—*Tablet*. "This is a first-rate translation by one of the very few persons who have the art of translating as if they were writing an original work."—*Dublin Review*.

Life of Fr. de Ravignan. Crown 8vo. 9s.

The Pilgrimage to Paray le Monial, with a brief notice of the Blessed Margaret Mary. 6d.

Patron Saints. By Eliza Allen Starr. Cr. 8vo. 10s.

His Eminence Cardinal Wiseman; with full account of his Obsequies; Funeral Oration by Archbishop Manning, &c. 1s.; cloth, red edges, 1s. 6d.

Count de Montalembert. By George White. 6d.

Life of Mgr. Weedall. By Dr. Husenbeth. 3s. 6d.

Life of Pope Pius IX. 6d. Cheap edition, 1d.

Challoner's Memoirs of Missionary Priests. 8vo. 6s.

BY THE POOR CLARES OF KENMARE.

Life of Father Matthew. 2s. 6d.

Life and Revelations of St. Gertrude. Cr. 8vo. 7s. 6d.

Spirit of St. Gertrude. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

Life of St. Aloysius. 6d.; St. Joseph, 6d., cloth, 9d.; St. Patrick, 6d., cloth, 9d.

Life of St. Patrick. Illustrated by Doyle. 4to. 20s.

### Our Lady.

Readings for the Feasts of Our Lady, and especially for the Month of May. By the Rev. A. P. Bethell. 18mo. 1s. 6d.; cheap edition, 1s.

The History of the Blessed Virgin. By the Abbé Orsini. Translated from the French by the Very Rev. F. C. Husenbeth, D.D. With eight Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

Manual of Devotions in Honour of Our Lady of Sorrows. Compiled by the Clergy at St. Patrick's Soho. 18mo. 1s.; cloth, red edges, 1s. 6d.

Life of Our Lady in Verse. 2s.

---

*R. Washbourné, 18 Paternoster Row, London.*

- Devotion to Our Lady in North America. By the Rev. Xavier Donald Macleod. 8vo. 5s. *cash*.
- "The work of an author than whom few more gifted writers have ever appeared among us. It is not merely a religious work, but it has all the charms of an entertaining book of travels. We can hardly find words to express our high admiration of it."—*Weekly Register*.
- Life of the Ever-Blessed Virgin. Proposed as a Model to Christian Women. 1s.
- Our Blessed Lady of Lourdes: a Faithful Narrative of the Apparitions of the Blessed Virgin Mary at the Rocks of Massabielle, near Lourdes, in the year 1858. By F. C. Husenbeth, D.D., V.G., and Provost of Northampton. 18mo. 6d.; cloth, 1s.; with Novena, 1s.; cloth, 1s. 6d. Novena, separately, 4d.; Litany, 1d., or 6s. per 100.
- The Blessed Virgin's Root traced in the Tribe of Ephraim. By the Rev. Dr. Laing. 8vo. 10s. 6d.
- Month of Mary for Interior Souls. By M. A. Macdaniel. 18mo. 2s.
- Month of Mary, principally for the use of religious communities. 18mo. 1s. 6d.
- A Devout Exercise in Honour of the Blessed Virgin Mary. From the Psalter and Prayers of S. Bonaventure. In Latin and English, with Indulgences applicable to the Holy Souls. 32mo. 1s.
- The Definition of the Immaculate Conception. 6d.
- The Little Office of the Immaculate Conception. In Latin and English. By the Very Rev. Dr. Husenbeth. 32mo. 4d.; cloth, 6d.; roan, 1s.; calf or morocco, 2s. 6d.
- Our Lady's Lament, and the Lamentation of St. Mary Magdalene. 2s.
- The Virgin Mary. By Dr. Melia. 8vo. 11s. 3d. *cash*.
- Archconfraternity of Our Lady of Angels. 1s. per 100.
- Litany of Our Lady of Angels. 1s. per 100.
- Concise Portrait of the Blessed Virgin. 1s. per 100.
- Origin of the Blue Scapular. 1d.
- Miraculous Prayer—August Queen of Angels. 1s. 100.

### Prayer-Books.

Washbourne's Edition of the "Garden of the Soul," in medium-sized type (small type as a rule being avoided). For prices see page 4.

The Little Garden. 6d., and upwards. *See page 5.*

The Lily of St. Joseph; a little Manual of Prayers and Hymns for Mass. Price 2d.; cloth, 3d.; or with gilt lettering, 4d.; more strongly bound, 6d.; or with gilt edges, 8d.; roan, 1s.; French morocco, 1s. 6d.; calf, or morocco, 2s.; gilt, 2s. 6d.

"It supplies a want which has long been felt; a prayer-book for children, which is not a childish book, a handy book for boys and girls, and for men and women too, if they wish for a short, easy-to-read, and devotional prayer-book."—*Catholic Opinion*. "A very complete prayer-book. It will be found very useful for children and for travellers."—*Weekly Register*. "A neat little compilation, which will be specially useful to our Catholic School-children. The hymns it contains are some of Fr. Faber's best."—*Universe*.

Life of Our Lord Commemorated in the Mass; a Method of Assisting at the Holy Sacrifice. By the Rev. E. G. Bagshawe, of the Oratory. 32mo. 3d.; cloth, 4d.; roan, 1s.; French morocco, 1s. 6d.; calf or morocco, 2s. 6d.

Path to Paradise. 36 full page Illustrations. Cloth, 3d. With 50 Illustrations, cloth, 4d.

Manual of Catholic Devotion. 6d.; roan, 1s. 6d.; calf or morocco, 2s. 6d.

Ursuline Manual. Persian calf, 7s. 6d.; morocco, 10s.

Crown of Jesus. Persian calf, 6s.; morocco, 7s. 6d. and 8s. 6d., with rims, 10s. 6d.; morocco, extra gilt, 10s. 6d., with rims, 12s. 6d.; ivory, with rims, 21s., 25s., 27s. 6d. and 30s.

Burial of the Dead (Adults and Infants) in Latin and English. Royal 32mo. cloth, 6d.; roan, 1s. 6d.

"Being in a portable form, will be found useful by those who are called upon to assist at that solemn rite."—*Tablet*.

In Suffragiis Sanctorum. Commem S. Josephi. Commem S. Georgii. Set of five for 4d.

---

*R. Washbourne, 18 Paternoster Row, London.*

- Paradise of God ; or Virtues of the Sacred Heart. 4s.  
Devotions to the Sacred Heart. By the Rev. S. Franco. 4s., paper covers, 2s.  
Devotions to the Sacred Heart. By the Rev. J. Joy Dean. Fcap. 8vo. 3s.  
Devotions to Sacred Heart of Jesus. By the Rt. Rev. Dr. Milner. *New Edition.* To which is added Devotions to the Immaculate Heart of Mary. 3d. ; cloth, 6d. ; gilt, 1s.  
Pleadings of the Sacred Heart. 18mo. 1s.  
Sacred Heart of Jesus offered to the Piety of the Young engaged in Study. By Rev. A. Deham, S.J. 6d.  
"Complete little Manual of Devotion to the Sacred Heart, and as such will be valued by Catholics of every age and station."—*Tablet.*  
Treasury of the Sacred Heart. With Epistles and Gospels. 18mo. cloth, 3s. 6d. ; roan, 4s. 6d.  
Little Treasury of Sacred Heart. 32mo. 2s., roan 2s. 6d.  
Manual of Devotion to the Sacred Heart, from the Writings of Bl. Margaret Mary Alacoque. By Denys Casassayas. Translated. 3d.  
Act of Consecration to the Sacred Heart. 1d.  
Act of Reparation to the Sacred Heart. 1s. per. 100.  
The Little Prayer-Book for Ordinary Catholic Devotions. Cloth, 3d.  
Garden of the Soul, in large type. Roan, gilt edges, 2s. ; French morocco, 3s., clasp and rims, 4s. 6d. ; French morocco, antique, 3s. 6d. ; calf, 5s. ; morocco, 6s. 6d. ; roan, sprinkled edges, with Epistles and Gospels, 2s. All the other styles with Epistles and Gospels, 6d. extra.  
Missal (complete). Persian calf, 8s. 6d. ; morocco, 10s. 6d., with rims, 13s. 6d. ; morocco, extra gilt, 12s. 6d., with rims, 15s. 6d. ; morocco, with turn-over edges, 13s. 6d. ; morocco antique, 15s. ; russia antique, 20s. ; ivory, with rims, 31s. 6d.  
Catholic Hours : a Manual of Prayer, including Mass and Vespers. By J. R. Digby Beste, Esq. 32mo. cloth, 2s. ; red edges, 2s. 6d. ; roan, 3s. ; morocco, 6s.



- A Prayer to be said for three days before Holy Communion, and another for three days after. 1d. each, or 6s. 100.
- S. Patrick's Manual. By the Poor Clares. 4s. 6d.
- Manual of Catholic Piety. Edition with green border. French mor., 2s. 6d.; mor., 4s.
- Occasional Prayers for Festivals. By Rev. T. Barge. 32mo. 4d. and 6d.; gilt, 1s.
- Illustrated Manual of Prayers. 32mo. 3d.; cloth, 4d.
- Key of Heaven. Very large type, 1s. Leather 2s. 6d. gilt, 3s.
- Catholic Piety. 32mo. 6d.; roan, 1s.; with Epistles and Gospels, roan, 1s.; French morocco, 1s. 6d., with rims and clasp, 2s.; imitation ivory, rims and clasp, 2s. 6d.; velvet rims and clasps, 3s. 6d.
- Key of Heaven. Same size and prices.
- Catholic Piety, or Key of Heaven, with Epistles and Gospels. Large 32mo. roan 2s.; French morocco, with rims, 3s.; extra gilt, 3s.; with rims, 3s. 6d.
- Novena of Meditations in Honour of S. Joseph, according to the method of S. Ignatius; preceded by a new exercise for hearing Mass according to the intentions of the souls in Purgatory. 18mo. 1s. 6d.
- Novena to St. Joseph. Translated by M. A. Macdaniel. To which is added a Pastoral of the late Right Rev. Dr. Grant. 32mo. 4d.; cloth, 6d.
- "All seasons are fitting in which to make Novenas to St. Joseph, for which reason this little work will be found very serviceable at any time."—*Weekly Register*.
- A New Year's Gift to our Heavenly Father. 4d.
- Devotions for Mass. Very large type, 2d.
- Memorare Mass. By the Poor Clares of Kenmare, 2d.
- Fourteen Stations of the Holy Way of the Cross. By St. Liguori. Large type edition, 1d.
- A Union of our life with the Passion of our Lord by a daily offering. 1s. per 100.
- Prayer for one's Confessor. 1s. per 100.
- Litany of Resignation. 1s. per 100.

---

*R. Washbourn, 18 Paternoster Row, London.*

- Intentions for Indulgences. 6d. per 100.  
Devotions to St. Joseph. 1s. per 100.  
Litany of S. Joseph, &c. 1s. per 100.  
Devotion to St. Joseph as Patron of the Church. 1d.  
Catholic Psalmist: or, Manual of Sacred Music,  
with the Gregorian Chants for High Mass, Holy  
Week, &c. Compiled by C. B. Lyons, 4s.  
The Complete Hymn Book, 136 Hymns. Price 1d.  
Douai Bible. 2s. 6d. ; calf or morocco, 6s. ; gilt, 7s.  
Church Hymns. By J. R. Digby Beste, Esq. 6d.  
Catholic Choir Manual: containing Vespers for all  
the Sundays and Festivals of the year, Hymns and  
Litanies, &c. Compiled by C. B. Lyons. 1s.  
Prayers for the Dying. 1s. per 100.  
Indulged Prayers for Souls in Purgatory. 1s. per 100.  
Indulged Prayers for the Rosary of the Holy  
Souls. 1d. each, 6d. a dozen, 3s. per 100.  
The Rosary for the Souls in Purgatory, *with Indul-*  
*genced Prayer.* 6d., 8d. and 9d. each. Medals sepa-  
rately, 1d. each, 9s. gross.

Rome, &c.

- Two Years in the Pontifical Zouaves. By Joseph  
Powell, Z.P. With 4 Engravings by Sergeant  
Collingridge, Z.P. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

"It affords us much pleasure, and deserves the notice of the Catho-  
lic public."—*Tablet.* "Familiar names meet the eye on every page,  
and as few Catholic circles in either country have not had a friend or  
relative at one time or another serving in the Pontifical Zouaves, the  
history of the formation of the corps, of the gallant youths, their  
sufferings, and their troubles, will be valued as something more than  
a contribution to modern Roman history."—*Freeman's Journal.*

- The Victories of Rome. By the Rev. Fr. Kenelm  
Digby Beste. Second edition. 1s.  
Civilization and the See of Rome. By Lord Robert  
Montague. 6d.  
Defence of the Roman Church against Fr. Gratry.  
By Dom Gueranger. 6d.  
Personal Recollections of Rome. By W. J. Jacob,  
Esq., late of the Pontifical Zouaves. 8vo. 1s. 6d.

- The Roman Question. By F. C. Husenbeth, D.D. 1s.  
 Henri V. (Comte de Chambord), September 29, 1873.  
 By W. H. Walsh. With a Portrait. 8vo. 1s. 6d.  
 The Rule of the Pope-King. By Rev. Fr. Martin. 6d.  
 The Years of Peter. By an Ex-Papal Zouave. 1d.  
 The Catechism of the Council. By a D.C.L. 2d.

### Tales, or Books for the Library.

Tom's Crucifix, and other Tales. By M. F. S. 3s.

"Eight simple stories for the use of teachers of Christian doctrine."—*Universe*. "This is a volume of short, plain, and simple stories, written with the view of illustrating the Catholic religion practically by putting Catholic practices in an interesting light before the mental eyes of children....The whole of the tales in the volume before us are exceedingly well written."—*Register*.

Simple Tales. Square 16mo. cloth antique, 2s. 6d.

"Contains five pretty stories of a true Catholic tone, interspersed with some short pieces of poetry. . . Are very affecting, and told in such a way as to engage the attention of any child."—*Register*. "This is a little book which we can recommend with great confidence as a present for young readers. The tales are simple, beautiful, and pathetic."—*Catholic Opinion*. "It belongs to a class of books of which the want is generally much felt by Catholic parents."—*Dublin Review*. "Beautifully written. 'Little Terence' is a gem of a Tale."—*Tablet*.

Terry O'Flinn's Examination of Conscience. By the Very Rev. Dr. Tandy. Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.; extra gilt, 2s.; cheap edition, 1s.

"The writer possesses considerable literary power."—*Register*. "The idea is well sustained throughout, and when the reader comes to the end of the book he finds the mystery solved, and that it was all nothing but a 'drame.'"—*Church Times*.

The Adventures of a Protestant in Search of a Religion: being the Story of a late Student of Divinity at Bunyan Baptist College; a Nonconformist Minister, who seceded to the Catholic Church. By Iota. 5s.; cheap edition, 3s.

"Will well repay its perusal."—*Universe*. "This precious volume."—*Baptist*. "No one will deny 'Iota' the merit of entire originality."—*Civilian*. "A valuable addition to every Catholic library."—*Tablet*. "There is much cleverness in it."—*Nonconformist*. "Malicious and wicked."—*English Independent*.

A Wasted Life. By Rosa Baughan. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

---

*R. Washbourne, 18 Paternoster Row, Lonaon.*



The Village Lily. Fcap. 8vo. 1s. ; gilt, 1s. 6d.

Fairy Tales for Little Children. By Madeleine Howley Meehan. Fcap. 1s. ; cloth extra, 1s. 6d. ; gilt, 2s.

"Full of imagination and dreams, and at the same time with excellent point and practical aim, within the reach of the intelligence of infants."—*Universe*. "Pleasing, simple stories, combining instruction with amusement."—*Register*.

Rosalie; or, the Memoirs of a French Child. Written by herself. Fcap. 8vo., 1s. and 1s. 6d. ; extra gilt, 2s.

"It is prettily told, and in a natural manner. The account of Rosalie's illness and First Communion is very well related. We can recommend the book for the reading of children."—*Tablet*. "The tenth chapter is beautiful."—*Universe*.

The Story of Marie and other Tales. Fcap. 8vo., 2s. ; cloth extra, 2s. 6d. ; gilt, 3s. ; or separately:—The Story of Marie, 2d. ; Nelly Blane, and A Contrast, 2d. ; A Conversion and a Death-Bed, 2d. ; Herbert Montagu, 2d. ; Jane Murphy, The Dying Gipsy, and The Nameless Grave, 2d. ; The Beggars, and True and False Riches, 2d. ; Pat and his Friend, 2d.

"A very nice little collection of stories, thoroughly Catholic in their teaching."—*Tablet*. "A series of short pretty stories, told with much simplicity."—*Universe*. "A number of short pretty stories, replete with religious teaching, told in simple language."—*Weekly Register*.

The Last of the Catholic O'Malleys. A Tale. By M. Taunton. 18mo. cloth, 1s. 6d. ; extra, 2s.

"A sad and stirring tale, simply written, and sure to secure for itself readers."—*Tablet*. "Deeply interesting. It is well adapted for parochial and school libraries."—*Weekly Register*. "A very pleasing tale."—*The Month*.

Eagle and Dove. From the French of Mademoiselle Zénaïde Fleuriot. By Emily Bowles. Cr. 8vo., 5s.

"We recommend our readers to peruse this well-written story."—*Register*. "One of the very best stories we have ever dipped into."—*Church Times*. "Admirable in tone and purpose."—*Church Herald*. "A real gain. It possesses merits far above the pretty fictions got up by English writers."—*Dublin Review*. "There is an air of truth and sobriety about this little volume, nor is there any attempt at sensation."—*Tablet*.

Cistercian Legends of the 13th Century. Translated from the Latin by the Rev. Henry Collins. 3s.

Cloister Legends: or, Convents and Monasteries in the Olden Time. *Second Edition*. Cr. 8vo. 4s.

The People's Martyr, a Legend of Canterbury. 4s.

R. Washbourne, 18 Paternoster Row, London.

- Rupert Aubray. By the Rev. T. J. Potter. 3s.  
 Farleyes of Farleye. By the same author. 2s. 6d.  
 Sir Humphrey's Trial. By the same author. 2s. 6d.  
 Chats about the Rosary; or, Aunt Margaret's Little  
 Neighbours. Fcap. 8vo. 3s.

"There is scarcely any devotion so calculated as the Rosary to keep up a taste for piety in little children, and we must be grateful for any help in applying its lessons to the daily life of those who already love it in their unconscious tribute to its value and beauty."  
 —*Month*. "We do not know of a better book for reading aloud to children, it will teach them to understand and to love the Rosary."  
 —*Tablet*. "A graceful little book, in fifteen chapters, on the Rosary, illustrative of each of the mysteries, and connecting each with the practice of some particular virtue."—*Catholic Opinion*.

- Margarethe Verflassen. Translated from the German  
 by Mrs. Smith Sligo. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. ; gilt, 3s. 6d.

"A portrait of a very holy and noble soul, whose life was passed in constant practical acts of the love of God."—*Weekly Register*.  
 "It is the picture of a true woman's life, well fitted up with the practice of ascetic devotion and loving unwearied activity about all the works of mercy."—*Tablet*.

- Keighley Hall and other Tales. By Elizabeth King.  
 18mo. 6d.; cloth, 1s. ; gilt, 1s. 6d. ; or, separately,  
 Keighley Hall, Clouds and Sunshine, The Maltese  
 Cross, 3d. each.

- Sir Ælfric and other Tales. By the Rev. G. Bamp-  
 field. 18mo. 6d. ; cloth, 1s. ; gilt, 1s. 6d.

- Ned Rusheen. By the Poor Clares. Crown 8vo. 6s.

- The Prussian Spy. A Novel. By V. Valmont. 4s.

- Adolphus; or, the Good Son. 18mo. gilt, 6d.

- Nicholas; or, the Reward of a Good Action. 6d.

- The Lost Children of Mount St. Bernard. 18mo. gilt, 6d.

- The Baker's Boy; or, the Results of Industry. 6d.

"All prettily got up, artistically illustrated, and pleasantly-written. Better books for gifts and rewards we do not know."—*Weekly Register*. "We can thoroughly recommend them."—*Tablet*.

- The Truce of God: a Tale of the Eleventh Century.

By G. H. Miles. 4s.

- Tales and Sketches. By Charles Fleet. 8vo. cloth,  
 2s. and 2s. 6d. ; cloth, gilt, 3s. 6d.

"Pleasingly-written, and containing some valuable hints. There is a good deal of nice feeling in these short stories."—*Tablet*.

- A Broken Chain. 18mo. gilt, 6d.  
 The Convent Prize Book. By the author of "Geraldine." Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d. ; gilt, 3s. 6d.  
 The Journey of Sophia and Eulalie to the Palace of True Happiness. Translated by the Rev. Father Ambrose, Mount St. Bernard's. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d. ; cheap edition, 2s. 6d.  
 The Fisherman's Daughter. By Conscience. 4s.  
 The Amulet. By Hendrick Conscience. 4s.  
 Count Hugo of Graenhove. By Conscience. 4s.  
 The Village Innkeeper. By Conscience. 4s.  
 Happiness of being Rich. By Conscience. 4s.  
 Florence O'Neill. By A. M. Stewart. 4s. 6d. and 6s.  
 Limerick Veteran. By the same. 4s. 6d. and 6s.  
 The Three Elizabeths. By the same. 3s. 6d. and 4s. 6d.  
 Alone in the World. By the same. 3s. 6d. and 4s. 6d.  
 Festival Tales. By J. F. Waller. 5s.  
 Shakespeare's Plays and Tragedies. Abridged and Revised for the use of Schools. By Rosa Baughan. 8vo. 7s. 6d.  
 Poems. By H. N. Oxenham. *Third Edition.* 3s. 6d.

#### Miscellaneous and Educational.

- History of Modern Europe. With a Preface by the Right Rev. Dr. Weathers. 12mo. cloth, 5s. ; gilt, 6s. ; roan, 5s. 6d.

"A work of special importance for the way in which it deals with the early part of the present Pontificate."—*Weekly Register.*

- The Continental Fish Cook ; or, a Few Hints on Maigre Dinners. By M. J. N. de Frederic. 18mo. 1s.

"This is an admirable collection of recipes, which many housekeepers will welcome for use. We strongly recommend our lady readers at once to procure it."—*Church Herald.* "It will give to all mistresses of households very valuable hints on maigre dinners, and we feel sure they will be glad to know of the existence of such a manual."—*Register.* "There are 103 recipes, all of which have been practically tested ; they combine variety, wholesomeness, and economy."—*Universe.* "It is an unpretending little work, but nevertheless containing many recipes, enabling housekeepers to provide an excellent variety of dishes, such as may lawfully be eaten in times of fasting and abstinence."—*Church Times.*

Culpepper. An entirely New Edition of Brook's Family Herbal. 150 engravings, drawn and coloured from living specimens. Crown 8vo., 5s. 6d.

University Education, under the Guidance of the Church; or, Monastic Studies. By a Monk of St. Augustine's, Ramsgate. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

"An admirable pamphlet. Its contents are above praise. We trust that it will be widely circulated."—*Weekly Register*. "The author is evidently a scholar, a well-read man, and a person of experience and wide reading. His essay, consequently, is worth both studying and preserving."—*Church Herald*.

Elements of Philosophy, comprising Logic, and General Principles of Metaphysics. By Rev. W. H. Hill, S.J. Second edition, 8vo. 6s.

"This work is from the pen of one who has devoted many years to the study and teaching of philosophy. It is elementary, and must be concise; yet it treats the important points of philosophy so clearly, and contains so many principles of wide application, that it cannot fail to be especially useful in a country where sound philosophical doctrine is perhaps more needed than in any other."

History of England. By W. Mylius. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

Catechism of the History of England. Cloth, 1s.

History of Ireland. By T. Young. 18mo. cloth, 2s. 6d.

The Illustrated History of Ireland. By the Nun of Kenmare. Illustrated by Doyle. 8vo. 11s.

The Patriots' History of Ireland. By the Poor Clares of Kenmare. 18mo. cloth, 2s.; cloth gilt, 2s. 6d.

A Chronological Sketch of the Kings of England and France. With Anecdotes for the use of Children. By H. Murray Lane. 2s. 6d.; or separately, England, 1s. 6d., France, 1s. 6d.

"Admirably adapted for teaching young children the elements of English and French history."—*Tablet*. "A very useful little publication."—*Weekly Register*. "An admirably arranged little work for the use of children."—*Universe*.

The Catholic Alphabet of Scripture Subjects. Price, on a sheet, plain, 1s.; coloured, 2s.; mounted on linen, to fold in a case, 3s. 6d.; varnished, on linen, on rollers, 4s.

"This will be hailed with joy by all young children in Catholic schools, and we should gladly see it placed conspicuously before the eyes of our little ones."—*Catholic Opinion*. "Will be very welcome in the infant school."—*Weekly Register*.

---

*R. Washbourne, 18 Paternoster Row, London.*



- 
- Bell's Modern Reader and Speaker. Cloth, 3s. 6d.  
General Questions in History, Chronology, Geography, the Arts, &c. By A. M. Stewart. 4s. 6d.  
Extracts from the Fathers and other Writers of the Church. 12mo. cloth, 4s. 6d.  
Brickley's Standard Table Book,  $\frac{1}{2}$ d.  
Washbourne's Multiplication Table on a sheet, 3s. per 100. Specimen sent for 1d. stamp.

**Music (*Net*).**

BY HERR WILHELM SCHULTHES.

- Veni Domine. Motett for Four Voices. 2s. ; vocal arrangement, 6d.  
Cor Jesu, Salus in Te Sperantium. 2s. ; with harp accompaniment, 2s. 6d. ; abridged edition, 3d.  
Mass of the Holy Child Jesus, and Ave Maria for unison and congregational singing, with organ accompaniment. 3s.  
The Vocal Part. 4d. ; or in cloth, 6d.  
The Ave Maria of this Mass can be had for Four Voices, with the Ingressus Angelus. 1s. 3d.  
Recordare. Oratio Jeremiæ Prophetæ. 1s.  
Ne projicias me a facie Tua. Motett for Four Voices. (T.B.) 1s. 3d.  
Benediction Service, with 36 Litanies. 6s.  
Oratory Hymns. 2 vols., 8s.  
Regina Cœli. Motett for Four Voices. 3s. ; vocal arrangement, 1s.  
Twelve Latin Hymns, for Vespers, &c. 2s.  
Litanies. By Rev. J. McCarthy. 1s. 3d.  
Six Litany Chants. By F. Leslie. 6d.  
Ave Maria. By T. Haydn Waud. 1s. 6d.  
Fr. Faber's Hymns. Various, 9d. each.  
Portfolio. With a patent metallic back. 3s.

---

A separate Catalogue of FOREIGN Books, Educational Books, Books for the Library or for Prizes, supplied ; also a Catalogue of School and General Stationery, a Catalogue of Second-hand Books, and a Catalogue of Crucifixes and other Religious Articles.

## INDEX TO AUTHORS.

	PAGE		PAGE
A'Kempis, Thomas . . . . .	8	King, Miss . . . . .	28
Allies, T. W., Esq. . . . .	11	Lacordaire, Père . . . . .	12
Amherst, Bishop . . . . .	8	Laing, Rev. Dr. . . . .	13, 16, 21
Bagshawe, Rev. Fr. . . . .	22	Lane, H. Murray, Esq. . . . .	30
Bagshawe, Rev. J. B. . . . .	14, 15	Lockhart, Rev. Fr. . . . .	13
Bampffield, Rev. G. . . . .	28	M'Corry, Rev. Dr. . . . .	17
Barge, Rev. T. . . . .	23	Macdaniel, Miss . . . . .	21, 24
Beste, J. R. D., Esq. . . . .	10, 23, 25	Macleod, Rev. X. D. . . . .	21
Beste, Rev. K. D. . . . .	25	Manning, Most Rev. Dr. . . . .	13, 19
Bethell, Rev. A. P. . . . .	21	Marshall, T. W. M., Esq. . . . .	10
Blosius . . . . .	7	Meehan, Madeleine Howley . . . . .	26
Boudon, Mgr. . . . .	7	Milner, Bishop . . . . .	23
Bowles, Emily . . . . .	27	Nary, Rev. J. . . . .	15
Bradbury, Rev. Fr. . . . .	29	Nevin, Willis . . . . .	2
Bridges, Miss . . . . .	1	Newman, Dr. . . . .	19
Brownlow, Rev. W. R. B. . . . .	5, 13	Oratorian Lives of the Saints . . . . .	18
Burder, Rt. Rev. Abbot . . . . .	6	Oxenham, H. N. . . . .	11, 29
Burke, S. H., M.A. . . . .	12	Ozanam, Professor . . . . .	2
Butler, Alban . . . . .	8, 17	Passionist Fathers . . . . .	13
Challoner, Bishop . . . . .	16	Philpin, Rev. Fr. . . . .	6
Collins, Rev. Fr. . . . .	9	Poirier, Bishop . . . . .	16
Conscience, Hendrick . . . . .	29	Poor Clares of Kenmare . . . . .	12, 20
Darras, Abbé . . . . .	7	Powell, J., Esq. . . . .	25
Deham, Rev. A. . . . .	23	Pye, H. J., Esq. . . . .	16
Dupanloup, Mgr. . . . .	2	Ravignan, Père . . . . .	8
Fleuriot, Mdle. Zénaïde . . . . .	27	Redmond, Rev. Dr. . . . .	1, 13
Francis of Sales, St. . . . .	10, 11	Richardson, Rev. Fr. . . . .	17
Frassinetti . . . . .	14	Robertson, Professor . . . . .	11, 13
Gibson, Rev. H. . . . .	15	Scaramelli . . . . .	9
Gilmour, Rev. R. . . . .	16	Schulthes, Herr . . . . .	31
Goffine, Rev. Fr. . . . .	16	Shakespeare . . . . .	29
Grace Ramsay . . . . .	19	Ségur, Mgr. de . . . . .	17
Grant, Bishop . . . . .	11, 24	Shepard, T. S., Esq. . . . .	19
Gueranger . . . . .	25	Sligo, A. V. Smith, Esq. . . . .	17
Hedley, Canon . . . . .	7	Sligo, Mrs. Smith . . . . .	27
Herbert, Lady . . . . .	1, 2, 6	Stewart, A. M. . . . .	29
Hill, Rev. Fr. . . . .	30	Tame, C. E., Esq. . . . .	21
Hope, Mrs. . . . .	9	Tandy, Very Rev. Dr. . . . .	26
Husenbeth, Very Rev. Dr. . . . .	20, 21	Taunton, Mrs. . . . .	27
Kenny, Dr. . . . .	17	Williams, Canon . . . . .	16

## CONTENTS.

	PAGE		PAGE
New Books - - - - -	1	Prayer-Books - - - - -	22
Dramas, Comedies, Farces - - - - -	3	Rome, &c. - - - - -	25
Religious Reading - - - - -	5	Tales, or Books for Library - - - - -	26
Religious Instruction - - - - -	14	Educational Works - - - - -	29
Lives of Saints, &c. - - - - -	17	Music - - - - -	31
Our Lady, Works relating to . . . . .	20		

R. WASHBOURNE, 18 PATERNOSTER ROW.

*Wash*



